

Samsung GALAXY S RELAY™ 4G

available at T-Mobile®

P O R T A B L E Q U A D - B A N D
M O B I L E P H O N E

User Manual

**Please read this manual before operating your
phone and keep it for future reference.**



Intellectual Property

All Intellectual Property, as defined below, owned by or which is otherwise the property of Samsung or its respective suppliers relating to the SAMSUNG Phone, including but not limited to, accessories, parts, or software relating there to (the "Phone System"), is proprietary to Samsung and protected under federal laws, state laws, and international treaty provisions. Intellectual Property includes, but is not limited to, inventions (patentable or unpatentable), patents, trade secrets, copyrights, software, computer programs, and related documentation and other works of authorship. You may not infringe or otherwise violate the rights secured by the Intellectual Property. Moreover, you agree that you will not (and will not attempt to) modify, prepare derivative works of, reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to create source code from the software. No title to or ownership in the Intellectual Property is transferred to you. All applicable rights of the Intellectual Property shall remain with SAMSUNG and its suppliers.

Open Source Software

Some software components of this product, including but not limited to 'PowerTOP' and 'e2fsprogs', incorporate source code covered under GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), OpenSSL License, BSD License and other open source licenses. To obtain the source code covered under the open source licenses, please visit:

<http://opensource.samsung.com>.

Disclaimer of Warranties; Exclusion of Liability

EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THE EXPRESS WARRANTY CONTAINED ON THE WARRANTY PAGE ENCLOSED WITH THE PRODUCT, THE PURCHASER TAKES THE PRODUCT "AS IS", AND SAMSUNG MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THE PRODUCT OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE; THE DESIGN, CONDITION OR QUALITY OF THE PRODUCT; THE PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCT; THE WORKMANSHIP OF THE PRODUCT OR THE COMPONENTS CONTAINED THEREIN; OR COMPLIANCE OF THE PRODUCT WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF ANY LAW, RULE, SPECIFICATION OR CONTRACT PERTAINING

THERE TO. NOTHING CONTAINED IN THE INSTRUCTION MANUAL SHALL BE CONSTRUED TO CREATE AN EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT. IN ADDITION, SAMSUNG SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND RESULTING FROM THE PURCHASE OR USE OF THE PRODUCT OR ARISING FROM THE BREACH OF THE EXPRESS WARRANTY, INCLUDING INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR LOSS OF ANTICIPATED PROFITS OR BENEFITS.

SAMSUNG IS NOT LIABLE FOR PERFORMANCE ISSUES OR INCOMPATIBILITIES CAUSED BY YOUR EDITING OF REGISTRY SETTINGS, OR YOUR MODIFICATION OF OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE.

USING CUSTOM OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE MAY CAUSE YOUR DEVICE AND APPLICATIONS TO WORK IMPROPERLY.

SAFE™ ("Samsung Approved For Enterprise") TO THE FULL EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., LTD., SAMSUNG TELECOMMUNICATIONS AMERICA, LLC, AND THEIR AFFILIATES (COLLECTIVELY REFERRED TO HEREIN AS THE "SAMSUNG ENTITIES") EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, INTEROPERABILITY OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, WITH RESPECT TO INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SECURITY PROTECTION, SAFE™ APPROVED DEVICES AND SAFE™ APPROVED APPLICATIONS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE SAMSUNG ENTITIES BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SECURITY PROTECTION, SAFE™ APPROVED DEVICES OR SAFE™ APPROVED APPLICATIONS. In addition, information technology security protection will be affected by features or functionality associated with, among other things the e-mail platform, master data management, and virtual private network solutions selected by the software provider, solution provider or user. Choice of an e-mail, master data management, and virtual private network solution is at the sole discretion of the software provider, solution provider or user and any associated effect on information technology security protection is solely the responsibility of the software provider, solution provider or user. For complete statement of limited warranty, please refer to www.samsung.com/us/safe, available on the web and where Samsung smartphone and Galaxy Tab™ devices are sold.

Samsung Telecommunications America (STA), LLC

Headquarters:

1301 E. Lookout Drive

Richardson, TX 75082

Customer Care Center:

1000 Klein Rd.

Plano, TX 75074

Toll Free Tel: 1.888.987.HELP (4357)

Internet Address:

<http://www.samsung.com>

©2012 Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC. Samsung is a registered trademark of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

Do you have questions about your Samsung Mobile Device?

For 24 hour information and assistance, we offer a new FAQ/ARS System (Automated Response System) at:

www.samsung.com/us/support

Nuance®, VSuite™, T9® Text Input, and the Nuance logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc., or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

ACCESS® and NetFront™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark, figure mark (stylized “B Design”), and combination mark (Bluetooth word mark and “B Design”) are registered trademarks and are wholly owned by the Bluetooth SIG.

microSD™ and the microSD logo are Trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Openwave® is a registered Trademark of Openwave, Inc.

Google, the Google logo, Android, the Android logo, Google Play, Gmail, Google Mail, Google Maps, Google Music, Google Talk, Picasa, YouTube and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.

Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

Swype and the Swype logos are trademarks of Swype, Inc. © 2010 Swype, Inc. All rights reserved.

DIVX[™], DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video up to HD 720p, including premium content.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, LLC, a subsidiary of Rovi Corporation. This is an official DivX Certified® device that plays DivX video. Visit www.divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX videos.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) movies. To obtain your registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in your device setup menu (tap **Apps > Settings > About device > Legal information > License settings > DivX® VOD > Register**). Go to vod.divx.com for more information on how to complete your registration.

Dynamic Noise Suppression from Audience

Your phone is equipped with an advanced voice processing chip that delivers clear mobile calls by suppressing background noise, intermittent sounds (like a siren or nearby conversation), and echoes, allowing you to hear and be heard nearly anywhere.

How Does It Work?

Based on the intelligence of the human hearing system, the technology:

- Captures, evaluates and distinguishes all the sound signals surrounding your phone, and the person you're speaking with.
- Then isolates the primary voice in conversation and filters out the background noise - so the person you're calling hears only your voice, without disturbing background noise.
- Dynamically equalizes and adjusts voice volume to optimize your calling experience, so you can hear clearly and don't need to speak louder to overcome surrounding noise.

The noise suppression technology is built-in and already enabled in your new mobile phone. So it's ready to provide unsurpassed voice clarity with every call.

Table of Contents

Section 1: Getting Started 7

Understanding this User Manual	7
Battery Cover	8
Battery	12
Extending Your Battery Life	15
Initial Device Configuration	16
Switching the Device On or Off	18
Restarting the Device	18
Locking and Unlocking the Device	18
Creating a New Google Account	19
Signing into Your Google Account	19
Retrieving your Google Account Password ...	20
Confirming the Default Image and Video Storage Location	20
Creating a Samsung Account	20
Voice Mail	22
Visual Voicemail	23
Task Manager	24

Section 2: Understanding Your Device25

Features of Your Device	25
Front View	26
Back View	28
Side Views	29
Device Display	29
Status Bar	30
Function Keys	37
Home Screen	37
Applications	40
Screen Navigation	49
Using Gestures	52
Menu Navigation	53
Customizing the Screens	55

Section 3: Memory Card62

Using the SD Card	62
SD card Overview	62

Section 4: Call Functions and

Contacts List66

Displaying Your Phone Number	66
Making a Call	66
Ending a Call	67
Making Emergency Calls	68
Dialing Options	69
Answering a Call	70
Managing Reject Calls	70
International Calls	71
Pause Dialing	72
Wait Dialing	72
Redialing the Last Number	72
Speed Dialing	73
Using S Voice	74
Wi-Fi Calling	75
In Call Options	78
Logs Tab	83

Section 5: Entering Text87

Text Input Methods	87
Selecting the Text Input Method	87
Entering Text Using T9 Trace	88

Using the Samsung Keyboard	88
Using Predictive Text	92
Using the Google Voice Typing	95
Entering Text Using the QWERTY Keyboard ...	96

Section 6: Contacts98

Accounts	98
Contacts List	99
Finding a Contact	102
Contact List Options	105
Contact Menu Options	106
Contact Entry Options	107
Joining Contact Information	107
Sending a Namecard	110
Copying Contact Information	111
Synchronizing Contacts	112
Display Options	113
Adding more Contacts via Accounts and Sync	114
Additional Contact Options	115
Groups	116
The Favorites Tab	118

Section 7: Messages119

Types of Messages	119
-------------------------	-----

Creating and Sending Messages	120
Message Options	121
Viewing Newly Received Messages	123
Deleting Messages	125
Message Search	126
Messaging Settings	126
Text Templates	129
Using Email	129
Microsoft Exchange Email (Outlook)	133
Using Google Mail	139
Google Talk	141
Google +	142
Messenger	142
Section 8: Multimedia	144
Assigning the Default Storage Location	144
Using the Camera	145
Camera Options	146
Sharing Pictures	150
Using the Camcorder	154
The Gallery	157
Using the Video Player	158
Media Hub	161

Play Movies	164
Play Music	165
Music Player	170
Using Playlists	173
Transferring Music Files	174
Removing Music Files	174
T-Mobile TV	174
YouTube	175

Section 9: Applications and

Development176

Applications	176
Access T-Mobile	176
Amazon	177
Calculator	177
Calendar	178
Camera	180
Clock	180
Contacts	183
Downloads	183
Dropbox	183
Email	185
Evernote	185

Facebook	186
Gallery	186
Game Base	186
Gmail	186
Google +	187
Internet	187
Latitude	187
Local	190
Lookout Security	190
Maps	191
Media Hub	193
Memo	194
Messaging	195
Messenger	195
Mobile HotSpot	195
MobileLife Organizer	196
More for Me	197
Music player	197
My files	198
Navigation	199
Phone	201
Play Books	201

Play Movies	202
Play Music	202
Play Store	202
Downloading a New Google Application	203
Launching an Installed Google Application	204
S Voice	205
Search	205
Settings	206
Slacker Radio	206
T-Mobile Name ID	206
T-Mobile TV	206
TecTiles	207
Talk	210
TeleNav GPS Navigator	210
Video Player	210
Visual Voicemail	211
Voice Recorder	211
VPN Client	212
YouTube	212

Section 10: Connections214

Internet	214
Bluetooth	221

Enable Downloading for Web Applications . .	225	Location Services	264
PC Connections	226	Security	265
Wi-Fi	228	Language and Input Settings	271
USB Tethering	230	Back up and Reset	277
Mobile HotSpot	231	Accessory	279
Section 11: Changing Your Settings 233		Date and Time	279
Accessing Settings	233	Accessibility Settings	280
Wi-Fi Settings	233	Developer Options	282
Bluetooth settings	235	Google Search Settings	284
Data Usage	237	About Device	284
More Settings	238	Software Update	285
Call Settings	247	Section 12: Health and Safety	
Sound Settings	253	Information287	
Display Settings	255	Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals . .	287
Wallpaper	256	Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification	
LED Indicator	257	Information	292
Motion Settings	257	FCC Part 15 Information to User	293
Power Saving Mode	258	Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS) .	294
SD Card & Device Storage	259	Smart Practices While Driving	294
Battery Usage	259	Battery Use and Safety	295
Application Manager	260	Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling . . .	297
Accounts and Synchronization	262	UL Certified Travel Charger	298

Display / Touch-Screen	299
GPS & AGPS	299
Emergency Calls	300
Care and Maintenance	301
Responsible Listening	302
Operating Environment	304
FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC)	
Regulations for Wireless Devices	306
Restricting Children's Access to Your	
Mobile Device	308
FCC Notice and Cautions	308
Other Important Safety Information	309
Section 13: Warranty Information	311
Standard Limited Warranty	311
End User License Agreement for Software ...	316
Index	322

Section 1: Getting Started

This section explains how to get started with your device by installing and charging the battery, installing the SIM card and optional memory card, and setting up your voice mail.

Before using your device for the first time, you'll need to install and charge the battery and install the SIM card.

The SIM card is loaded with your subscription details, such as your PIN, available optional services, and many other features. If desired, you can also install an SD card to store media for use with your phone.

Understanding this User Manual

The sections of this manual generally follow the features of your phone. A robust index for features begins on page 322. Also included is important safety information that you should know before using your phone. This information is available near the back of the guide, beginning on page 287.

This manual provides navigation instructions according to the default display settings. If you select other settings, navigation may be different.

Unless otherwise specified, all instructions in this manual assume you are starting from the Home screen and using the available keys.

Note: Instructions in this manual are based on default settings, and may vary from your device, depending on the software version on your device, and any changes to the phone's Settings.

Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this User Manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

All screen images in this manual are simulated. Actual displays may vary, depending on the software version of your device and any changes to the device's Settings.

Special Text

Throughout this manual, you'll find text that is set apart from the rest. These are intended to point out important information, share quick methods for activating features, to define terms, and more. The definitions for these methods are as follows:

- **Notes:** Presents alternative options for the current feature, menu, or sub-menu.
- **Tips:** Provides quick or innovative methods, or useful shortcuts.
- **Important:** Points out important information about the current feature that could affect performance.
- **Warning:** Brings to your attention important information to prevent loss of data or functionality, or even prevent damage to your phone.

Text Conventions

This manual provides condensed information about how to use your phone. To make this possible, the following text conventions are used to represent often-used steps:

- Arrows are used to represent the sequence of selecting successive options in longer, or repetitive, procedures.

Example: From the Home screen, press  (Menu) → **Settings → Bluetooth.**

Battery Cover

The battery, SIM card and SD card are installed under the battery cover.

Important! Before removing or replacing the battery cover, make sure the device is switched off. To turn the device off, hold down the  key until the power-off image displays, then tap **Power off.**

Caution! Do not bend or twist the back cover excessively during installation or removal. Doing so may damage the cover.

To remove the battery cover:

1. Hold the device firmly and locate the cover release latch.
2. Place your fingernail in the opening and firmly “pop” the cover off the device (similar to a soda can).



To replace the battery cover:

- Position the battery cover over the battery compartment and press down until you hear a click.

SIM Card Overview

Important! Before removing or replacing the SIM card, make sure the device is switched off. To turn the phone off, hold down the  key until the power-off image displays, then tap **Power off**.

The SIM card is loaded with your subscription details such as your telephone number, PIN, available optional services, and many other features.

Important! The SIM card and its information can be easily damaged by scratching or bending, so be careful when handling, inserting, or removing the card. Keep all SIM cards out of reach of small children.

Some features on your device (such as Wi-Fi Calling) can be unlocked by using the new ISIM card.

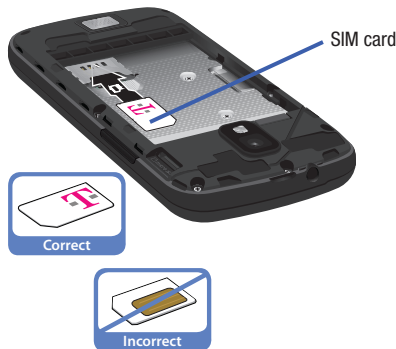
To use this new ISIM card, call or contact T-Mobile customer service for more information.

This card contains the necessary information for identifying and authenticating the user to the IMS (IP Multimedia Subsystem).

Installing and Removing the SIM card

To install the SIM card:

1. Make sure that the card's gold contacts face into the phone and that the upper-left angled corner of the card is positioned as shown.



2. Carefully slide the SIM card into its card socket until it clicks into place.

To remove the SIM card:

1. Remove the battery cover.
2. Carefully place your fingernail into the end of the SIM slot and push the card slightly out.
3. Carefully slide the card out of the SIM card socket.

Note: If the card is not inserted correctly, the device will not detect it and no service will be available. If this happens, turn off the device, remove the card, and reinstall the card in the correct orientation.

Installing the microSD Memory Card

Your device supports an optional (external) microSD™ or microSDHC™ memory card for storage of media such as music, pictures, video and other files. The SD card is designed for use with this mobile device and other devices.

Note: microSD memory cards include capacities of up to 2GB. microSDHC™ memory card types can range from 4GB to up to 64GB.

Note: This device supports up to a 32GB microSDHC memory card.

1. Remove the battery cover.
2. Locate the microSD card slot on the inside of the device.
3. Orient the card with the gold strips facing down.
4. Carefully slide the microSD card into the card socket until it clicks into place. For more information on how to use the SD card see *“Using the SD Card”* on page 62

Important! Be sure to align the gold contact pins on the card with the phone's contacts.



Removing the microSD Memory Card

1. Remove the battery cover.
2. Firmly press the card into the slot and release it. The card should pop partially out of the slot.
3. Remove the card from the slot.
4. Replace the battery cover.

Battery

Before using your device for the first time, install the battery and charge it fully.

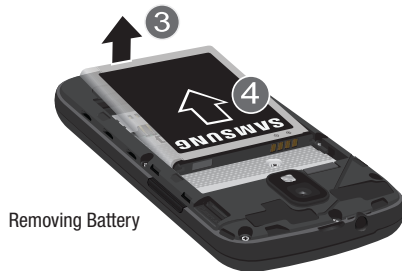
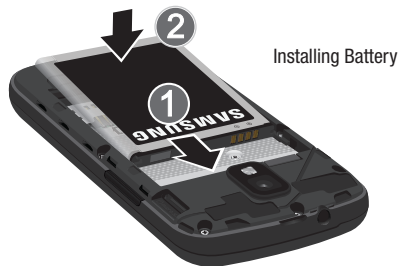
Important! Before removing or replacing the battery, make sure the device is switched off. To turn the device off, hold down the  key until the power-off image displays, then tap **Power off**.

Installing the Battery

1. Slide the battery into the compartment (1) so that the tabs on the end align with the slots at the bottom of the phone, making sure the connectors align.
2. Gently press down to secure the battery (2).

Removing the Battery

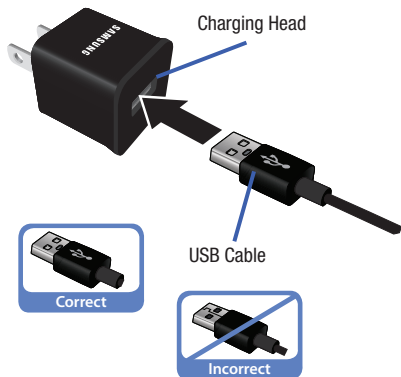
- Grip the battery at the top end (3) and lift it up and out of the battery compartment (4).



Charging the Battery

Your device is powered by a rechargeable Li-ion battery. A wall charger, which is used for charging the battery, is included with your device. Use only approved batteries and chargers. Ask your local Samsung dealer for further details.

Before using your device for the first time, you must fully charge the battery. A discharged battery recharges fully in approximately 4 hours.

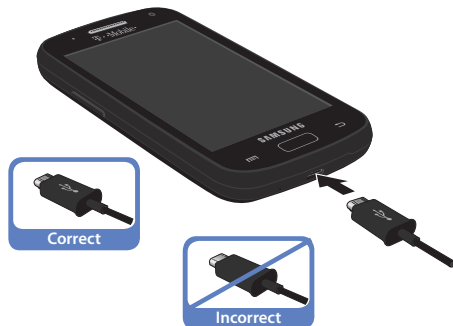


Note: Verify that the battery is installed prior to connecting the wall charger. If both the wall charger is connected and the battery is not installed, the handset will power cycle continuously and prevent proper operation. Failure to unplug the wall charger before you remove the battery, can cause the device to become damaged.

Important! It is recommended you fully charge the battery before using your device for the first time.

1. Connect the USB cable to the charging head.
2. Locate the Charger/Accessory jack.
3. Insert the USB cable into the device's Charger/Accessory jack.
4. Plug the charging head into a standard AC power outlet. The device turns on with the screen locked and indicates both its charge state and percent of charge.

Warning! While the device is charging, if the touch screen does not function due to an unstable power supply unplug the USB power adapter from the power outlet or unplug the USB cable from the device.



Note: This illustration displays both the **correct** and **incorrect** orientation for connecting the charger. If the charger is incorrectly connected, damage to the accessory port will occur therefore voiding the phone's warranty.

5. When charging is finished, first unplug the charger's power plug from the AC wall outlet, then disconnect the charger's connector from the device.

Important! If your handset has a touch screen display, please note that a touch screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, refer to “*Standard Limited Warranty*” on page 311.

Low Battery Indicator

When the battery level is low and only a few minutes of talk time remain (~15% charge), a warning tone sounds and the “Battery low” message repeats at regular intervals on the display. In this condition, your device conserves its remaining battery power, by dimming the backlight.

When the battery level becomes too low, the device automatically turns off.

The on-screen battery charge is represented (by default) as a colored battery icon. You can also choose to display a percentage value. Having a percentage value on-screen can provide a better idea of the remaining charge on the battery.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Display** → **Display battery percentage**.

For more information, refer to “*Display Settings*” on page 255.

Extending Your Battery Life

Active applications, light levels, Bluetooth usage, and GPS functionality all act to drain your battery. The following is a list of helpful tips that can help conserve your battery power:

- Reduce your backlight on time.
- Turn Bluetooth off when not in use.
- Turn Wi-Fi off when not in use.
- Deactivate the GPS when not needed. Most applications using this function will periodically query the GPS satellites for your current location; each query drains your battery.
- Do not wait until your battery is completely depleted before charging your device. Repeating this process of a complete discharge and recharge can over time reduce the storage capacity of any battery.
- Turn off Automatic application sync.
- Use the Power Savings Widget to deactivate hardware functions such as Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, GPS, Synchronization, or LCD brightness setting.
- Check the Battery use screen to review what features or functions have been consuming your battery resources.

- Check the Running Services and close any unnecessary applications.
- Use the Task Manager feature to end/shutdown background applications that are still running. These minimized applications can, over time, cause your device to “slow down”.
- Turn off any streaming services after use (see Running Services).
- Animated wallpapers use processing power, memory, and more power. Change your Live Wallpaper to a non-animated Wallpaper gallery or Gallery image.

Initial Device Configuration

1. Select a language from the associated field. English is the default language.
2. Tap **Start**.

Note: You may be prompted with a notification that your activation is completed.

3. If prompted to set the date and time, select the **Automatic date and time** field and tap **Next**.
4. At the Samsung account screen, choose to either **Create a new account**, **Sign in**, or **Skip**. Follow the on-screen instructions.

5. Choose to either **Sign in** to your existing Google account, **Get an account** by creating a new one, or **Not now** to continue.
6. Select/deselect the desired Google location services and tap **Next**.
7. If prompted to enable purchases, enter your credit card information and click **Save**.
— or —
Click **Skip** to continue without entering this information.
8. Select your Backup and Restore settings by placing a check mark alongside the associated field and tap **Next**.
9. Enter a **First** and **Last** name then tap **Next**. This will help to identify this as your device.
10. Read and agree to the Google services notice by tapping **Next**.

Note: Enabling Google location services can drain battery power.

11. When prompted with the Dropbox activation screen, you can choose to either: **Create a new dropbox account**, **I already have an account**, **Disclaimer**, or tap **No thanks** to continue.

Note: For more information, refer to “*Dropbox*” on page 183.

12. Tap **Finish** to complete the setup process.
13. Read the on-screen System Manager Application information.

Note: This software collects only diagnostic data from your device so that T-Mobile technicians can better troubleshoot issues with your device.

14. Select either **More Info..** (to read additional information) or **Close** to close the message screen.

Important! Selecting **Close** only closes the current description screen and does not disable data collection. To disable data collection, go to **Settings → Back up and reset → Collect diagnostics** and turn off the **Allow Diagnostics** feature. For more information, refer to “*Collect Diagnostics*” on page 278.

15. At the Welcome and setup screen, you can choose to sync up with an existing Email or Facebook account.
 - Tap **Skip** if you wish to continue without setup.
16. Go through the on-screen tutorial.

Switching the Device On or Off

Once the device has been configured, you will not be prompted with setup screens again.

1. Press and hold  (Power/End) until the device switches on.

The device searches for your network and after finding it, you can make or receive calls.

Note: The display language is preset to English at the factory. To change the language, use the Language menu. For more information, refer to “*Language and Input Settings*” on page 271.

2. Press and hold  (Power/End) until the Device options screen appears.
3. Tap **Power off** ().

Restarting the Device

1. Press and hold  (Power/End) until the Device options screen appears.
2. Tap **Restart** ().

Locking and Unlocking the Device

By default, the device screen locks when the backlight turns off.

- Place your finger on the screen and swipe the glass in any of the directions shown unlock the device.

Note: You can choose to configure lock settings to prevent unauthorized use of your device. For more information, refer to “*Security*” on page 265.

Creating a New Google Account

You should create a Google™ Account when you first use your device in order to fully utilize the functionality. This account provides access to several device features such as Gmail, Google Maps, Google Talk, and the Play Store™ applications. Before you are able to access Google applications, you must enter your account information. These applications sync between your device and your online Google account.

To create a new Google Account from your device:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Play Store).
2. Read the introduction and tap **New** to begin.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to create a Google Account.

– or –

If this is not the first time you are starting the device,

tap  →  (Gmail).

Note: If you already have a Google account, you only need to sign in.

To create a new Google Account from the Web:

1. From a computer, launch a Web browser and navigate to www.google.com.
2. On the main page, click **Sign-in** → **Create an account for free**.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts to create your free account.
4. Look for an email from Google in the email box you provided, and respond to the email to confirm and activate your new account.

Signing into Your Google Account

1. Launch an application that requires a Google account (such as Play Store or Gmail).
2. Click **Existing**.
3. Tap the **Email** and **Password** fields and enter your information.
4. Tap **Sign in**. Your device communicates with the Google servers to confirm your information.
5. If prompted, create a new Gmail username by entering a prefix for your **@gmail.com** email address.

Retrieving your Google Account Password

A Google account password is required for Google applications. If you misplace or forget your Google Account password, follow these instructions to retrieve it:

1. From your computer, use an Internet browser and navigate to <http://google.com/accounts>.
2. Click on the **Can't access your account?** link.
3. Follow the on-screen password recovery procedure.

Confirming the Default Image and Video Storage Location

Although the device is configured to store new pictures and videos to the Memory card, it is a very good idea to confirm this location before using your device.

Important! Too many users can overlook this storage destination until something goes wrong. It is recommended that you verify this location or change it before initiating the use of the camera or camcorder features.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Camera**).
2. From the viewfinder screen, tap  (**Settings**) and scroll down to the Storage entry.
3. Tap this entry and select the desired default storage location for newly taken pictures or videos. Choose from: **Phone** or **Memory card**.

Note: It is recommended that you set the option to **Memory card**.

4. Press  to return to the Home screen.

Creating a Samsung Account

Just as important as setting up and activating a Google account to help provide access to Maps, Latitude, Play Store, etc.. An active Samsung account is required to begin accessing applications such as Media Hub.

Note: The Samsung account application will manage your access to the previously mentioned applications, and there is no longer a need to remember different passwords for each application.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Account and sync**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Accounts and sync** slider  to the right to turn it on .
3. Tap **Add account → Samsung account → Existing**.
4. If you have previously created a Samsung account, tap **Sign in**.
– or –
If this is your first time, tap **Create new account**.
5. Tap **Terms and conditions** and **Privacy policy** to read the legal disclaimers and related information.
6. If you agree to the terms, place a green check mark in the **I accept all the terms above** field and tap **Agree**.
7. Enter your the required information and tap **Sign up**.

Note: You may be prompted to confirm your credentials via email.

8. Verify your account via email by accessing the email address provided during setup and following the steps outlined to complete your registration.

– or –

If you have already setup your email account on the device, tap **Go to Mailbox** and follow the on-screen instructions.

– or –

If you have already verified your email address, tap **Activate account**.

Note: Without confirming your email address and following the documented procedures, related applications will not function properly since it is Samsung account that is managing their username and password access.

Voice Mail

Setting Up Your Voice Mail

Your device automatically transfers all unanswered calls to voicemail, even if your device is in use or turned off. As soon as your battery is charged and the SIM card inserted, activate your voicemail account.

Important! Always use a password to protect against unauthorized access.

For new users, follow the instructions below to set up voice mail:

Note: Voicemail setup may be different depending on your network.

1. From the Home screen, tap  and then touch and hold the  key until the device dials voicemail. You may be prompted to enter a password.
2. Follow the tutorial to create a password, a greeting, and a display name.

Accessing Your Voice Mail

You can access your Voice Mail by either pressing and holding  on the keypad, or by using the phone's Application icon, then tapping the Voice Mail application. To access Voice Mail using the menu:

1. From the Home screen, tap  and then touch and hold  until the device dials voicemail.

Note: Touching and holding  will launch Visual voicemail if it is already active on your device.

2. When connected, follow the voice prompts from the voicemail center.

Accessing Your Voice Mail From Another Phone

1. Dial your wireless phone number.
2. When you hear your voicemail greeting, press the asterisk key on the phone you are using.
3. Enter your passcode.

Visual Voicemail

Visual Voicemail enables users to view a list of people who left a voicemail message, and listen to the any message they want without being limited to chronological order.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Applications) →  (Visual Voicemail).
2. Read the on-screen information and tap **Next**.
3. Read the on-screen information and tap **Done**. A list of the voicemail messages displays.

Important! If this is your first time to access Visual Voicemail, you may be prompted to enter a new PIN code and tap **Next** to activate Visual Voicemail.

Note: You must subscribe to Visual Voicemail service to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

4. Tap an on-screen voicemail message to play it back.

To check Visual Voicemail messages:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Applications) →  (Visual Voicemail).
2. Tap the voicemail message you want to play.
3. Tap  (Play).

To delete Visual Voicemail messages:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Applications) →  (Visual Voicemail).
2. Tap the voicemail message you want to delete.
3. Tap  (Delete) → OK.

Task Manager

Your device can run applications simultaneously, with some applications running in the background.

Sometimes your device might seem to slow down over time, and the biggest reason for this are background applications. These are applications that were not properly closed or shutdown and are still active but minimized. The Task Manager not only lets you see which of these applications are still active in the background but also easily lets you choose which applications are left running and which are closed.

Note: The larger the number of applications running on your phone, the larger the energy drain on your battery.

Task Manager Overview

- Press and hold  (Home) then tap **Task manager**. This screen contains the following tabs:
 - **Active applications** display those currently active applications running on your phone.

- **Downloaded** displays any installed packages or applications from the Play Store that are taking up memory space. Tap **Uninstall** to remove them from your phone.
- **RAM**, which displays the amount of current RAM (Random Access Memory) currently being used and allow you to **Clear Memory**.
- **Storage** displays a visual graph indicating the available and used space within the System storage, USB storage, and external SD card.
- **Help** provides additional battery saving techniques.

Shutting Down an Currently Active Application

1. Press and hold  (Home) then tap **Task manager**.
2. From the **Active applications** tab, tap **End** to close selected applications.
– or –
Tap **End all** to close all background running applications.

Section 2: Understanding Your Device

This section outlines key features of your device. It also describes the device's keys, screen and the icons that display when the device is in use.

Features of Your Device

Your device is lightweight, easy-to-use and offers many significant features. The following list outlines a few of the features included in your device.

- QWERTY keyboard (both on-screen and slide out)
- High Speed Packet Access Plus (HSPA+) delivering data speeds faster than the current 3G network technology.
- 4.0" Super AMOLED™ screen (480x800)
- Android v 4.0, Ice Cream Sandwich Platform
- TecTile™ compliant
- Support for Gestures
- Wi-Fi® Capability
- USB Tethering-capable
- Over 450,000 Apps available to download from the Google Play™ Store
- Lookout® Security (Security, Backup, Missing Device capabilities)
- 5 Megapixel Camera and Camcorder with autofocus and digital zoom
- 1.5 Megapixel Front Facing camera for Video Chat
- S-Beam and Android Beam file transfer technology
- Bluetooth enabled
- NFC tag-compatible
- Full Integration of Google Mobile™ Services (Gmail, YouTube, Google Maps, Google Voice Search)
- Multiple Messaging Options: Text/Picture/Video Messaging, and Instant Messaging with Google Talk™
- Corporate and Personal Email
- Music Player with multitasking features
- Pre-loaded e-reader applications such as Play Books™
- Assisted GPS (Google Navigation and TeleNav™ GPS Navigator)
- Webkit-based browser
- Expandable memory slot - supports up to 32GB
- Mobile HotSpot Capability
- USB Tethering-capable

- T-Mobile® TV
- Slacker Radio®
- Video Chat via Google Talk
- Google Play™ Music
- Evernote® reminder application
- Wi-Fi Calling via the use of a ISIM card
- Access to thousands of Movies and TV Shows with the Samsung Media Hub
- HD Video Player 720p
 - Codec: MPEG4, H.264, H.263, VC-1, WMV7/8, VP8, MP43
 - Format: 3GP (MP4), WMV (ASF), AVI, and DivX
- Video Player support for PIP (Picture in Picture) viewing
- DivX Certified® to play DivX® video up to HD 720p, including premium content
- Kies Air to wirelessly sync your PC with your phone via a Wi-Fi® connection
- Pre-loaded with Evernote and Facebook® apps

Front View

The following illustrations show the main elements of your device. The following list correlates to the illustrations.

1. **LED Notification** illuminates with a series of distinct colors and flashing patterns to indicate different notifications and statuses. Events include Charging, Low battery, and Missed event:
 - Powering on - **blue** blinks/animates
 - Battery Charging - **red** remains on
 - Battery Fully Charged - **green** remains on.
 - Low Battery or Charging Error- **red** blinks/animates
 - Missed Event Notification (Call or Messaging) - **blue** blinks/animates

For more information, refer to “*LED Indicator*” on page 257.



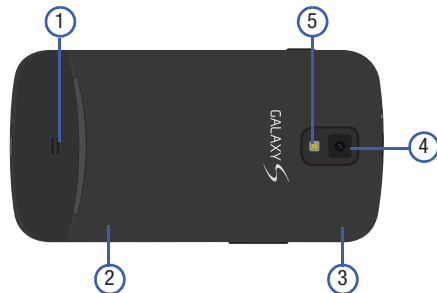
2. **Display** shows all the information needed to operate your phone, such as the connection status, received signal strength, phone battery level, and time.
3. **Menu key** displays a list of options available for the current screen. From the Home screen it displays Edit, Create folder, Search, and Settings options.
4. **Home key** displays the Home screen when pressed. Press and hold to display your recent apps, Task manager, and Remove all option. Double-press to activate S Voice.
5. **Microphone** is used during phone calls and allows other callers to hear you clearly when you are speaking to them.
6. **USB Power/Accessory connector** allows you to connect a power cable or optional accessories such as a USB/ data cable.
7. **Back key** redisplay the previous screen or clears entries.
8. **Front Facing Camera** allows you to take pictures while facing the screen and allows you to video conference.

9. **Headset jack** allows you to connect a hands-free headset so you can listen to music.
10. **Proximity Sensor** detects how close an object is to the surface of the screen. This is typically used to detect when your face is pressed up against the screen, such as during a phone call.
 - While talking on the phone, the sensor detects talk activity and locks the keypad to prevent accidental key presses.
11. **Light Sensor** lets you use the ambient light level to adjust the screen brightness/contrast. This sensor decreases screen brightness in dim light.
 - In a bright light condition (outdoors), the sensors cause the device to increase the brightness and contrast for better viewing.
 - In dim light conditions, the device increases the screen brightness to compensate.
12. **Receiver** allows you to hear the other caller and the different ring tones or sounds offered by your phone.

Back View

The following illustration shows the external elements of your Device:

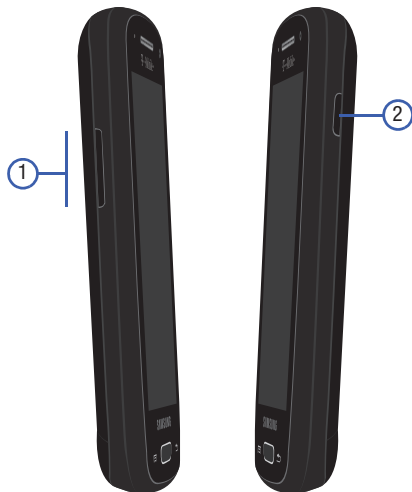
1. **External speaker** allows you to hear ringers, music, and other sounds offered by your phone.
2. **SIM Card Slot** (internal) Installation location for SIM card.
3. **microSD Card Slot** (internal) allows you use a microSD card to expand the memory of your device.



4. **Camera lens** is used to take photos.
5. **Flash** is used to take photos in low-light conditions.

Side Views

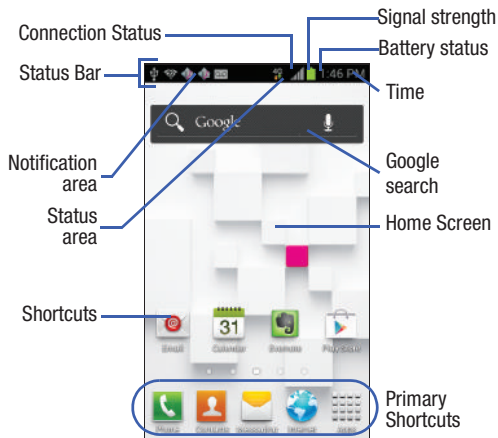
The following illustration shows the side elements of your device:



1. **Volume key** allows you to adjust the ringer volume in standby mode (with the phone open) or adjust the voice volume during a call. When receiving an incoming call:
 - Pressing the volume key down mutes the ring tone.
2. **Power/End key**  ends a call or switches the device off and on. Press and hold for two seconds to turn toggle the volume mode (Mute, Vibrate/Mute, and volume on) or Airplane mode states, turn the device on or off, or Restart.

Device Display

Your display provides information about the device's status, and is the interface to manage features. The display indicates your connection status, signal strength, battery status and time. Icons display at the top of the device when an incoming call or message is received and also alerts you at a specified time when an alarm was set. The screen also displays notifications, and Application (or shortcut) bar with five primary shortcuts: Phone, Contacts, Messaging, Internet, and Apps.



Display settings

In this menu, you can change various settings for the for the wallpaper, cube, brightness or backlight.

- From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Settings**) → **Display**. For more information, refer to “*Display Settings*” on page 255.

Status Bar

The Status Bar shows information about the connection status, signal strength, phone battery level, and time, and displays notifications about incoming messages, calls and other actions.

This list identifies the icons you see on your phone's display screen:

Indicator Icons

This list identifies the symbols you'll see on your device's display and Indicator area:

Note: Some Notification icons can be hidden manually by toggling the status of the Notification panel function. For more information, refer to “*Accessing Additional Screen Functions*” on page 36.



Displays your current signal strength. The greater the number of bars, the stronger the signal.



Indicates that the Airplane Mode is active. You cannot send or receive any calls or access online information.



Indicates there is no signal available.



Displays when there is no SIM card in the phone.



Displays when there is a system error or alert.



Displays if you have not setup the automatic software update feature. For more information, refer to “*Software Update*” on page 285.



Displays when a call is in progress. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area.



Displays when a call is on hold. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area.



Displays when an active call is routed through a Bluetooth headset. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area.



Displays when you have missed an incoming call.



Displays when the speakerphone is on. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area.



Displays when the T-Mobile Name ID application did not recognize a recent number and would like to know whether you wish to Not add, or add as a New or Existing number.



Displays when the microphone is muted. Icon is displayed in the Status bar area.



Displays when Call forwarding is set to Always forward. Displayed in the Status bar when the current call is minimized. For more information, refer to “*Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings*” on page 250.



Displays your current battery charge level. Icon shown is fully charged.



Displays when the current battery is 100 percent charged and the Display battery percentage option is enabled within the **Settings** → **Display** menu.



Displays your battery is currently charging.



Displays your current battery charge level is low (Charge: ~28% - 15%).



Displays your current battery charge level is very low (Charge: ~15% - 5%).



Shows your current battery only has up to 4% power remaining and will soon shutdown. (Charge: ~4% - 1%).



Displays when connected to the EDGE network.



Displays when your phone is communicating with the EDGE network.



Displays when connected to the 3G network. 3G indicator is only seen when roaming.



Displays when your phone is communicating with the 3G network. 3G indicator is only seen when roaming.



Displays when connected to the HSPA+ network.



Displays when your phone is communicating with the HSPA+ network.



Displays when the phone has detected an active USB connection and is in a USB Debugging mode.



Displays when there is a new text message.



Displays when an outgoing text message has failed to be delivered.



Displays when there is a new voicemail message.



Displays when there is a new visual voicemail message.



Displays in the notifications window when there is a new Email message.



Displays in the notifications window when there is a new Gmail message.



Displays when a new Google+ notification has been received.



Displays when a new Facebook update or notification has been received.



Displays when a new MobileLife notification is available.



Displays when the time and date for a Calendar Event has arrived. For more information, refer to “*Calendar*” on page 178.



Displays when an alarm is set. For more information, refer to “*Setting an Alarm*” on page 180.



Displays when the device is in Silent mode. All sounds except media and alarms are silenced, and Silent mode is set to **Vibrate**. For more information, refer to “*Silent mode via Device Options Screen*” on page 253.



Displays when the device is in Silent mode. All sounds are silenced, and Silent mode is set to **Mute**.



Displays when data synchronization and application sync is active and synchronization is in progress for Gmail, Calendar, and Contacts.



Displays when Bluetooth technology is active and enabled.



Displays when Bluetooth technology is active and there is an available open and visible Bluetooth device.



Displays when the Bluetooth technology is active and communicating with an external device.



Displays when the an outbound file transfer is in progress.



Displays when a file or application download is in progress.



Displays when your device is connected being used to control streaming media and is connected to a Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) certified device.



Displays when updates are available for download.



Displays when a Play Store download has completed.



Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and configured for a direct connection to another compatible device in the same direct communication mode.



Displays when the USB Tethering mode is active and communicating. For more information, refer to “*USB Tethering*” on page 230.



Displays when Wi-Fi is being used as a Mobile HotSpot feature is active and communicating. For more information, refer to “*Mobile HotSpot*” on page 231.



Displays when a share shot has been established with other users via a Wi-Fi Direct connection.



Displays when the Wi-Fi calling feature is active. Minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.



Displays when the Wi-Fi calling feature is active and you are using it with within your current active call.



Displays when there is an error in the use or 911 registration of the Wi-Fi Calling feature.



Displays when you are currently in Emergency calling mode. You must exit this mode to resume normal calling function.



Displays in the notifications window when action is required within the Samsung account application.



Displays in the notifications window when there are too many on-screen notification icons to display. Tap to show more notifications.



Tap to select a text input method.



Displays in the notifications window when a song is currently playing within the Music Player.



Displays in the notifications window when a song is currently playing within the Play Music application.



Displays when your device's GPS is on and communicating.



Displays when the external SD card (internal microSD) has been disconnected (unmounted) from the phone and is now ready for either removal or formatting.



Displays when the External SD card is being prepared for mounting to the device. This is required for communication with the External SD card.



Displays when the microSD card has been improperly removed or unexpectedly.



Displays when Power saving mode is enabled.



Displays when the Power saving alert notification has been activated. You are then prompted to view your current battery level.



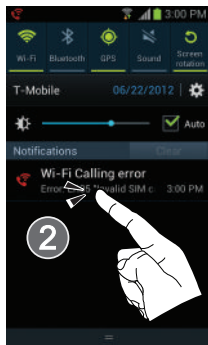
Displays when TTY device has been inserted.

For more details on configuring your phone's settings, see *"Changing Your Settings"* on page 233.

Notification Screen

The Notification area indicates new message events (data sync status, new messages, calendar events, call status, etc). You can expand this area to display the Notification screen that provides more detailed information about the current on-screen notification icons.

1. Touch the Status bar to reveal the Notification screen, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notification screen (1).
2. Tap a notification entry to open the associated application (2).

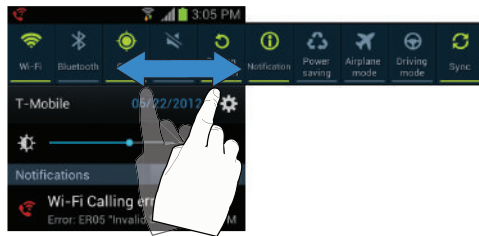


Clearing Notifications

1. In a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen to open the Notification screen.
2. Tap **Clear**. The notifications are cleared from the panel.

Accessing Additional Screen Functions

In addition to notifications, this screen also provides quick and ready access to separate device functions. These can be quickly activated or deactivated by toggling them on or off.



The following functions can either be activated (green) or deactivated (gray): **Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, GPS, Sound/Vibrate/Mute, Screen rotation, Notification, Power saving, Airplane mode, Driving mode, or Sync.**

Function Keys

Your device comes equipped with three main function keys that can be used on any screen: **Home**, **Menu**, and **Back**.

Home Key

The **Home** key () takes you back to your Home screen (#3 of the 5 initially available screens).

- Press and hold to launch the Recent apps/Task manager screen. For more information, refer to *“Accessing Recently-Used Applications”* on page 55.

Menu Key

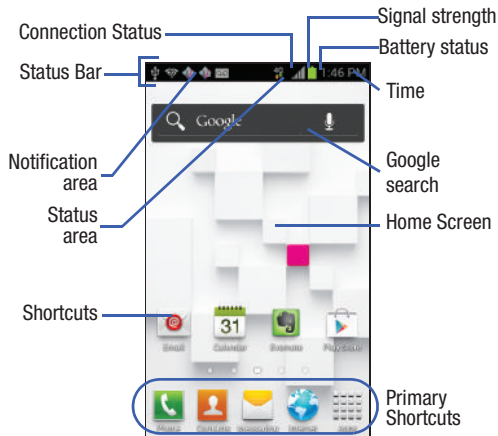
The **Menu** key () activates an available menu function for the current screen or application.

Back Key

The **Back** key () returns you to the previously active screen. If the on-screen keyboard is currently open, this key closes the keyboard.

Home Screen

The Home screen is the starting point for using the applications on your phone. There are initially seven available panels, each populated with default shortcuts or applications. You can customize each of these panels.



- **Notification area** displays those icons associated with end-user notifications such as: email messages, calls (missed, call in progress), new voicemail, upcoming event, USB connection, Emails, and Text/MMS messages.
 - These notifications appear at the top-left of the screen (within the Status bar area) and display important user information.
 - This information can be accessed by swiping down from the Status bar (page 35).
- **Status area** displays those icons associated with the status of the device such as communication, coverage, Bluetooth, 4G/3G, Wi-Fi communication, battery levels, GPS, etc.
- **Home Screen** is a customizable screen that provides information about notifications and device status, and allows access to application Widgets.
- **Extended Home Screens** extend beyond the current visible screen width to provide more space for adding icons, widgets, and other customization features.
 - There are four available extended screens (panels) each of which may be populated with its own shortcuts or widgets. These screens share the use of the five Primary Shortcuts.
 - The current screen is indicated at the bottom by a white square. Up to seven (7) total screens are available.

Note: Both the status bar and primary shortcuts are visible across all screens.

- **Google search** is an on-screen Internet search engine powered by Google™. Touch to access the Voice Actions feature where you can verbally enter a search term and initiate an online search.
 - Tap  (**Voice Actions**) to launch the function from within this Google widget.
- **Widgets** are self-contained on-screen applications (not shortcuts). These can be placed onto any of the available screens (Home or extended).
- **Shortcuts** are icons that launch available device applications such as Camera, YouTube, Contacts, Phone, Email, Play Store, etc. These function the same as shortcuts on your computer.
 - Although some may already be found on the Extended Home screens, the majority can also be found within the Applications screens.
 - The Application screens can be accessed by tapping  (**Apps**) from the Primary shortcuts area.
 - Shortcuts can be removed from a screen and added back any number of times.

- **Primary Shortcuts:** are four shortcuts present throughout all of the available screens and can be used to both navigate within the device or launch any of the following functions:

- **Phone** () launches the phone-related screen functions (Keypad, Logs, Favorites, and Contacts).
- **Contacts** () launches the Contacts-related screens (Phone, Groups, Contacts, and Favorites).
- **Messaging** () launches the Messaging menu (create new messages or open an existing message string).
- **Internet** () launches the built-in Web browser.
- **Apps** toggles functionality between the Home and Application screens.
 - Tap  (**Apps**) to access the Application screens loaded with every available local application.
 - While in the Applications screens, tap  (**Back**) to easily return to the Home screen.

As you transition from screen to screen, a screen indicator (located at the bottom) displays the currently active panel.

Home Screen Menu Settings

When on the Home screen, press  to access the following menu options:

- **Edit** allows you to add or remove extended screens from your device. You can have up to six extended screens (one Home screen and up to six Extended screens).
- **Create folder** allows you to create on-screen folders to help organize files of application shortcuts.
- **Search** displays the Google Search box that you can use to search for a key term online.
- **Settings** provides quick access to the device's settings menu.
 - The Settings menu can also be accessed by pressing  and then tapping  → **Settings**.



Applications

The Application menu provides quick access to the most frequently used applications. Applications display on each of the three panels on the Applications screens.

Important! Once you log into your Google account. All previously downloaded apps should now be populated within the Application screens.

Application Screen Menu Settings

When on the Apps screen, the following menu options are available:

1. Press  and then tap  (Apps).
2. Press  and then select from the following options:
 - **Play Store:** provides quick access to the Play Store (page 202).
 - **Edit:** allows you to add a new folder to the Application screen and then drag/drop an existing application into it. This feature requires the view be set to Customizable view.
 - **Uninstall:** allows you to uninstall a user-downloaded application. Only those applications that are not default to the device can be downloaded. Tap  to remove the selected app.

- **Downloaded applications:** allows you to filter the view of apps to only those applications that you have downloaded.
- **View type:** allows you to customize the way the Apps menu listing is shown (page 58).
- **Share apps:** allows you to share information about selected applications with external users (page 56).
- **Hide applications:** allows you to specify which current applications are hidden from view in this menu. Once you have selected the apps, tap **Done**.
- **Show hidden applications:** allows you to specify which previously hidden applications are can be made visible again for viewing in this menu. Once you have selected the apps, tap **Done**.

3. Press  to return to the Home screen.

The following table contains a description of each application available via both the Primary shortcuts area and via the Applications screens. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided. For information on navigating through the Applications icons, see *“Navigating Through the Application Menus”* on page 53



Access T-Mobile

This application provides you online access to account information such as your current activity, billing information, service plans, downloads, and other information.

For more information, refer to *“Access T-Mobile”* on page 176.



Amazon

Provides access to Amazon.com via a built-in mobile application.

For more information, refer to *“Amazon”* on page 177.



Calculator

Found within the Utility application, this launches the on-screen calculator application. The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions; addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. You can also use this as a scientific calculator.

For more information, refer to *“Calculator”* on page 177.



Calendar

Launches a calendar application that syncs to your Facebook™, Google™, or Microsoft Exchange work calendars.

For more information, refer to *“Calendar”* on page 178.



Camera

Launches the built-in 5.0 megapixel camera application from where you can take a picture with either the front or rear facing cameras.

Note: A micro SD card is no longer needed to take pictures or shoot video due to built-in storage.

Note: The default storage location is your device. It is recommended that you store your pictures and videos on a microSD card. If something were to occur to the device, your files are still protected.

In addition to taking photos, the built-in camera also doubles as a camcorder that also allows you to record, view, and send high definition videos.

For more information, refer to “*Using the Camera*” on page 145. For more information, refer to “*Using the Camcorder*” on page 154.



Clock

Allows you to set an alarm, configure and view the World clock, use a stopwatch, set a timer, or Desk clock. The applications display in a tabular format and quickly accessed with the touch of a finger.

For more information, refer to “*Clock*” on page 180.



Contacts

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts List is your phone’s built-in memory.

For more information, refer to “*Contacts List*” on page 99.



Downloads

Provides quick access to tabs containing a list of your current downloaded files (Internet and Other).

For more information, refer to “*Downloads*” on page 183.



Dropbox

Provides access to your desktop files directly from your device.

For more information, refer to “*Dropbox*” on page 183.



Email

Provides access to both your Outlook (Exchange Server-based) work email and Internet email accounts (such as Gmail and Yahoo! Mail).

For more information, refer to “*Using Email*” on page 129.



Evernote

Allows you to easily remind yourself of things across all of your current devices. Evernote lets you create to-do lists, take pictures, record voice memos, and write reminders to yourself.

For more information, refer to “*Evernote*” on page 185.



Facebook

This built-in application allows you to go directly to your Facebook account rather than accessing it from the Browser.

For more information, refer to “*Facebook*” on page 186.



Gallery

Displays a Gallery of camera images and video stored in the microSD card.

For more information, refer to “*The Gallery*” on page 157.



Game Base

Provides access to a game rental and purchase services for compatible T-Mobile Android devices.

For more information, refer to “*Game Base*” on page 186.



Gmail

Provides access to your Gmail account. Google Mail (Gmail) is a web-based email service. Gmail is configured when you first set up your phone.

For more information, refer to *“Using Google Mail”* on page 139.



Google +:

This application makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+.

For more information, refer to *“Google +”* on page 142.



Internet

Open the browser to start surfing the web. The browser is fully optimized and comes with advanced functionality to enhance the Internet browsing feature on your phone.

For more information, refer to *“Internet”* on page 214.



Latitude

Lets you see your friends' locations and share yours with them. The application also lets you see your friends' locations on a map or in a list.

For more information, refer to *“Latitude”* on page 187.



Local

Displays company locations as markers on Google Maps. When viewing an area you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about the business, see coupons, public responses, and more.

For more information, refer to *“Local”* on page 190.



Lookout Security

Lookout Security™ provides mobile device-specific security features that are coupled with a minimal performance hit.

For more information, refer to “*Lookout Security*” on page 190.



Maps

Launches a Web-based dynamic map that helps you find local businesses, locate friends, view maps and get driving directions.

For more information, refer to “*Maps*” on page 191.



Media Hub

Provides you with a one stop shop for the hottest movie and TV content. You can now rent or purchase your favorite content and then watch it from the convenience of anywhere.

For more information, refer to “*Media Hub*” on page 161.



Memo

Found within the Utility application, this creates new text memos.

For more information, refer to “*Memo*” on page 190.



Messaging

Provides access to text and multimedia messaging (SMS and MMS).

For more information, refer to “*Creating and Sending Messages*” on page 120.



Messenger:

Allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your phone.

For more information, refer to “*Messenger*” on page 142.



Mobile HotSpot

Provides access to the Tethering and portable HotSpot menu where you can use either the USB tethering or portable HotSpot functionality.

For more information, refer to *“Mobile HotSpot”* on page 195.



MobileLife Organizer

Organizes your family’s calendar, family shopping list, To-Do list, and Journal entries in one place.

For more information, refer to *“MobileLife Organizer”* on page 196.



More for Me

Provides customized offers, discounts and deals right to your phone.

For more information, refer to *“More for Me”* on page 197.



Music Player

Launches the built-in Music player that allows you to play music files that you have stored on your microSD card. You can also create playlists.

For more information, refer to *“Music Player”* on page 170.



My files

Lets you view supported image files and text files on both your internal storage and microSD card. Organize and store data, images, and more in your own personal file folders. Files are stored to either the internal storage or memory card in separate (user defined) folders.

For more information, refer to *“My files”* on page 198.



Navigation

Launches a Web-based navigation application.

Caution! Traffic data is not real-time and directions may be wrong, dangerous, prohibited, or involve ferries.

For more information, refer to “*Navigation*” on page 199.



Phone

Provides the ability to make or answering calls, access the Contacts list, which is used to store contact information.

For more information, refer to “*Call Functions and Contacts List*” on page 66.



Play Books

Provides access to read over 3 million ebooks on the go.

For more information, refer to “*Play Books*” on page 201.



Play Movies

Rent movies on Google Play™ and watch instantly using the Google Play Movies app.

For more information, refer to “*Play Movies*” on page 164.



Play Music (Google Music)

Launches the built-in Google Music Player that allows you to play music files that you have both downloaded from Google Music and stored on your microSD card.

For more information, refer to “*Play Music*” on page 165.



Play Store:

Formerly known as the “Android Market”, it provides access to downloadable applications, games, music, and movies. The Play Store also allows you to provide feedback and comments about an application, or flag an application that might be incompatible with your phone.

For more information, refer to “*Play Store*” on page 202.



S Voice

Launches your phone's built-in voice recognition system that allows you to initiate several common tasks without having to touch the phone. Features include: Call, Text, Navigate, Play music, Memo, and Driving mode.

For more information, refer to *"Using S Voice"* on page 74.



Search

Provides an on-screen Internet search engine powered by Google™.



Settings

Accesses the device's built-in Settings menu.

For more information, refer to *"Changing Your Settings"* on page 233.



Slacker Radio

Slacker Radio® offers free, internet radio for mobile phones.

For more information, refer to *"Slacker Radio"* on page 206.



T-Mobile Name ID

Allows you to modify the on-screen Caller ID information.

For more information, refer to *"T-Mobile Name ID"* on page 206.



T-Mobile TV

Allows you to watch live mobile TV on your device. This application is a subscription service.

For more information, refer to *"T-Mobile TV"* on page 206.



Talk

Launches a Web-based Google Talk application that lets you chat and video conference with family and friends over the Internet for free.

For more information, refer to *"Google Talk"* on page 141.



TeleNav GPS Navigator

This driving aid provides both audible and visual navigation instructions for GPS navigation.

For more information, refer to *"TeleNav GPS Navigator"* on page 210.



Video Player

Launches your device's built-in video application that plays video files stored on your microSD card.

For more information, refer to *"Using the Video Player"* on page 158.



Visual Voicemail

Visual Voicemail enables users to view a list of people who left a voicemail message, and listen to the any message they want without being limited to chronological order.

For more information, refer to *"Visual Voicemail"* on page 23.



Voice Recorder

Found within the Utility application, allows you to record an audio file up to one minute long and then immediately send it as a message.

For more information, refer to *"Voice Recorder"* on page 211.



VPN Client

This is a full-featured VPN Client that provides support for the latest IPSec VPN standards and provides interoperability with support for all major VPN Gateways.

For more information, refer to *"VPN Client"* on page 212.



YouTube

Launches the YouTube webpage via the browser.

For more information, refer to *"YouTube"* on page 175.

Important! For help closing any or all current applications, use the Task manager. For more information, refer to *"Task Manager"* on page 24.

Screen Navigation

Using the touch screen display and the keys, you can navigate the features of your device and enter characters. The following conventions are used in this manual to describe the navigation action in the procedures.

Navigating Through the Screens

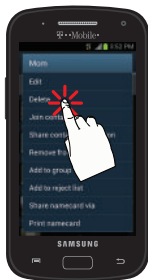
The following terms describe the most common hardware and on-screen actions.

- **Press and hold:** Pressing relates to use of the hardware keys and buttons to select or activate an item. For example: press the Navigation key to scroll through a menu. Some buttons and keys require you to press and hold them to activate a feature, for example, you press the Lock key to lock and unlock the phone.

Press and hold



Tap



Touch and hold



- **Tap:** Use a brief touch to select items on the display or to enter text on the virtual QWERTY keyboard. For example: touch an Application icon to open the application. A light touch works best.
- **Touch and hold:** Touch and hold an icon or key to open the available options, or to access a pop-up menu. For example: touch and hold from the Home screen to access a menu of customization options.
- **Flick:** Move your finger in lighter, quicker strokes than swiping. This finger gesture is always used in a vertical motion, such as when flicking through contacts or a message list.
- **Swipe or slide:** Quickly drag your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen. This allows you to move the area of focus or to scroll through a list. For example: slide your finger left or right on the Home screen to scroll among the seven panels.
- **Drag:** Press and hold your finger with some pressure before you start to move it. Do not release your finger until you have reached the target position.
- **Rotate:** Automatically change the screen orientation from portrait to landscape by turning the device sideways. For example: rotate to landscape orientation when entering text, to provide a larger keyboard, or when viewing web content to minimize scrolling.

Flick



Swipe or slide
and Drag



Rotate

- **Pinch:** “Pinch” the screen using your thumb and forefinger to zoom out when viewing a picture or a Web page. (Move fingers inward to zoom out.)
- **Spread:** “Spread” the screen using your thumb and forefinger to zoom in when viewing a picture or a Web page. (Move fingers outward to zoom in.)



Pinch (Zoom Out)



Spread (Zoom In)

Note: These screens can be re-arranged in any desired order. For more information, refer to “*Customizing the Screens*” on page 55.

- **Motion Navigation and Activation:** The device comes equipped with the ability to assign specific functions to certain device actions that are detected by both the accelerometer and gyroscope.

Note: Motion must be enabled for this feature to be active. For more information, refer to “*Motion Settings*” on page 257.

Using Gestures

By activating the various gesture features within the Motion menu (page 257), you can access a variety of time saving functions.

To activate motion:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Motion**.
2. Activate the feature by moving the **Motion** slider to the On state ( **ON**).
3. Tap the desired on-screen motion option.

The following is a description some of the most commonly used gestures:

- **Direct call:** Once enabled, the device will dial the currently displayed on-screen Contact entry as soon as you place the device to your ear.
- **Smart alert:** Once enabled, pickup the device to be alerted and notified of you have missed any calls or messages.
- **Double tap to top:** Once enabled, double tap the top of the device to be taken to the top of the current on-screen list.

- **Tilt to zoom:** Once enabled, you must be on a screen where content can be zoomed. In a single motion, touch and hold two points on the display then tilt the device back and forth to zoom in or out.
- **Pan to move icon:** Once enabled, touch and hold a desired application shortcut icon or widget on the screen. Once it detaches, move the device left or right to migrate it to a new location.
- **Pan to browse images** Once enabled, touch and hold a desired on-screen image to pan around it. Move the device left or right to pan vertically or up and down to pan horizontally around the large on-screen image.
- **Shake to update:** Once enabled, shake your device to rescan for Bluetooth devices, rescan for Wi-Fi devices, Refresh a Web page, etc..
- **Turn over to mute/pause:** Once enabled, mute incoming calls and any playing sounds by turning the device display down on a surface. This is the opposite of the Pickup to be Notified Gesture.
- **Learn about motions:** Provides access to on-screen animated tutorials for all the available motions.

Menu Navigation

You can tailor the device's range of functions to fit your needs using both menus and applications. Menus, sub-menus, and features are accessed by scrolling through the available on-screen menus. Your device defaults with seven screens.

Navigating Through the Application Menus

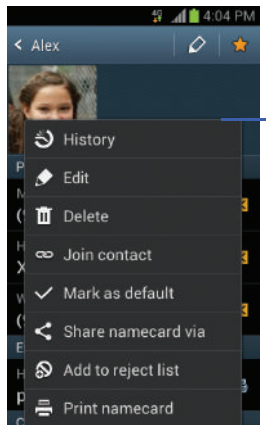
There are three default Application Menu screens available. As you add more applications from the Play Store, more screens are created to house these new apps.

1. Press  and then tap  (**Apps**). The first Application Menu screen displays.
 - To close the Applications screen, press  (**Home**).
2. Sweep the screen to access the other menus.
3. Tap any of the on-screen icons to launch the associated application.

Using Sub-Menus

Sub-menus are available from within most screen and applications.

1. Press . A sub-menu displays at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap an available on-screen option.

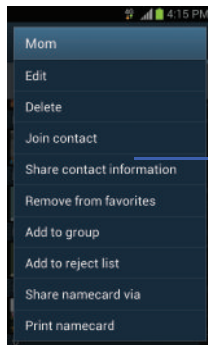
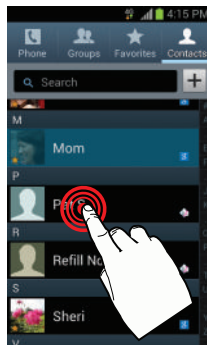


Sub-Menu items

Using Context Menus

Context menus (also called pop-up menus) contain options that apply to a specific item on the screen. They function similarly to menu options that appear when you right click your mouse on your desktop computer.

- Touch and hold an item on-screen to open its context menu.



Context Menu

Accessing Recently-Used Applications

1. Press and hold  to open the recently-used applications window.

Note: This recent applications screen also provides access to the **Task manager**.

2. A pop-up displays the six most recently used applications.
3. Tap an icon to open the recent application.

Customizing the Screens

You can customize the Home screens (panels) to display the Widgets, Shortcuts, Folders, or Wallpapers. For example, one screen could contain the Music Player shortcut and other forms of media, while another screen might contain communication apps such as Gmail.

You can customize your Home screen by doing the following:

- **Adding, Deleting, and Rearranging screens**
- **Assigning a New Home screen**
- **Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts**
- **Sharing Application Information**
- **Managing Shortcuts**

- **Adding and Removing Widgets**
- **Changing the Background (Wallpapers)**

Adding and Deleting Screens

Your phone comes with seven screens. You can delete these screens and then add them back later.

Note: These screens can be deleted and re-arranged.

Important! Your phone can only contain at most seven screens and at least one screen.

To delete a screen:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Edit**.
2. In a single motion, touch and hold, then drag the undesired screen down to the **Remove** tab ().
3. Press  to return to the main Home screen.



To add a screen:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Edit**.
2. Tap  (**Add screen**). The newly added screen appears as the last page.
3. Press  to return to the main Home screen.

Rearranging the Screens

1. Press  →  and then tap **Edit**.
2. Touch and hold a screen and then drag it into its new location. Upper-left is screen position #1 and bottom-right is screen last screen.

Assigning a New Home Screen

1. Press  →  and then tap **Edit**.
2. Tap  (**Home screen**). The new Home screen then indicates this icon in the upper-right.

Sharing an App

The device's Applications menu now comes with a feature that allows you to share information about your selected applications with external users.

1. Press  and then tap  (**Apps**).
2. Press  and then tap **Share apps**.
3. Place a check mark alongside those applications you wish to share information about and tap **Done**.

Note: Shared applications consist of those that have previously been downloaded from the Play Store.

4. Select a sharing method. Choose from: **Bluetooth**, **Dropbox**, **Email**, **Evernote - Create Note**, **Facebook**, **Gmail**, **Google+**, **Messaging**, and **Wi-Fi Direct**.
5. The recipient will be notified about the receipt of the new information.

Managing Shortcuts

Note: To move a shortcut from one screen to another, you must carefully touch and hold the shortcut and slowly drag it to the edge of the screen. As the shortcut turns light blue, you can begin to move it to the adjacent screen. If this does not work, delete it from its current screen. Activate the new screen and then add the selected shortcut.

To add a shortcut from the Applications screen:

1. Press  to go to the Home screen.
2. Select a screen location for your new shortcut by scrolling across your available screens until you reach the desired one.



3. Tap **Apps** () to reveal all your current available applications. By default, applications are displayed as an Alphabetical grid.
4. Scroll across the screens and locate your desired application.
5. Touch and hold the on-screen icon. The new shortcut then appears to hover over the current screen.
6. While still holding the on-screen icon, position it on the current screen. Once complete, release the screen to lock the shortcut into its new position.

To add a shortcut via the Add to Home screen:

1. Press  to go to the Home screen.
2. Navigate to a screen with an empty area.
3. Touch and hold an empty area of the screen.
4. From the **Home screen** window tap **Add to Home screen** → **Apps and widgets**.
5. Scroll across the pages and tap a selection.

To delete a shortcut:

1. Press  to go to the Home screen.
2. Touch and hold the desired shortcut. This unlocks it from its location on the current screen.
3. Drag the shortcut over the **Remove** tab () and release it.

Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts

Note: You can change any of your primary shortcuts with the exception of the **Apps** shortcut.

To remove a primary shortcut:

1. Press  to go to the Home screen.
2. Touch and hold the primary shortcut you want to replace, then drag it to an empty space on any available screen. The primary shortcuts are now updated to show an empty slot.

To insert a new primary shortcut:

1. Press  and then tap  (**Apps**).
2. Locate your desired application, then touch and hold the on-screen icon to position it on a desired screen. For more information, refer to “*Managing Shortcuts*” on page 57.
3. Locate the screen with the desired shortcut you want to add as the new primary shortcut.
4. Touch and hold the shortcut until it detaches from the screen.
5. In a single motion, touch and hold the new shortcut, then drag it to the empty space in the row of primary shortcuts. The new primary shortcut will now appear on both the Home and Extended screens.

Adding and Removing Widgets

Widgets are self-contained applications that can be placed on any screen. Unlike shortcuts, widgets appear as applications.

To add a Widget:

1. Press  and then tap  (**Apps**) → **Widgets** tab.
2. Scroll across the Widget pages and locate a desired Widget.
3. Touch and hold an available Widget until it detaches from the screen.
4. While still holding the Widget, scroll left or right across the available screens and let go of the Widget to place it on your current screen.



To remove a Widget:

1. Touch and hold a Widget until it unlocks from the current screen.
2. Drag the widget over the **Remove** tab () and release it.
 - As you place the Widget into the Trash, both items turn red.
 - This action doesn't delete the Widget, it just removes it from the current screen.

To place a widget onto a different screen:

1. Touch and hold the widget until it becomes transparent.
2. Slowly drag it past the edge of the screen until the adjacent page appears highlighted and it then snaps onto the new page.
3. Drag the widget to its desired position on the new screen.
4. Repeat these steps to continue moving it to other screens.

Managing Wallpapers

Wallpapers consist of either Gallery images (user taken), Live wallpapers (animated backgrounds), or Wallpaper gallery (default phone wallpapers).

Note: Selecting animated Live wallpapers will require additional battery power.

To change the current Home screen wallpaper:

1. Navigate to any screen.
– or –
Press  to go to the Home screen.
2. Touch and hold an empty area of the screen.
3. From the **Home screen** window tap **Set wallpaper for → Home screen**.

4. Select a Wallpaper type:

- Tap **Gallery** to select from a user image stored in the camera image gallery, crop the image, and tap **Done**.
- Tap **Live wallpapers** to select from a list of animated backgrounds, once done tap **Set wallpaper**.
- Tap **Wallpapers**, scroll through the images, tap a wallpaper image, then tap **Set wallpaper**.

Note: Wallpapers supports the following image types: JPEG, PNG, GIF, BMP, and WBMP.

To change Wallpapers from Settings Menu:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Wallpaper**.
2. Access an available option. Choose from **Home screen**, **Lock screen**, or **Home and lock screens**.

Note: The **Home and lock screens** is an additional option that allows you to change both screens at the same time.

3. Select a wallpaper type (**Gallery**, **Live wallpaper**, or **Wallpapers**).
4. Choose an image and tap **Done** or **Set wallpaper**.

To change the current Lock screen wallpaper:

1. Navigate to any screen, touch and hold an empty area of the screen, and tap **Set wallpaper for → Lock screen**.

– or –

Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Wallpaper → Lock screen**.

2. Select a Wallpaper type:
 - Tap **Gallery** to select from a user image stored in the camera image gallery, crop the image, and tap **Done**.
 - Tap **Wallpaper**, scroll through the images, tap a wallpaper image, then tap **Set wallpaper**.

Section 3: Memory Card

Your device lets you use a microSD™ (SD) or microSDHC™ card (also referred to as a memory card) to expand available memory space. This secure digital card enables you to exchange images, music, and data between SD-compatible devices. This section addresses the features and options of your device's SD functionality. The device has a USB SD card mode.

- microSD card storage: up to 2GB in size
- SDHC card storage: up to 32GB in size

Using the SD Card

There are several methods for using the SD card:

1. Connecting to your PC to store files (such as music, videos, or other types of files and media).
2. To activate the camera, video, music player, and other dependant media or applications.

Important! Your device can support SDHC cards up to 32GB capacity.

SD card Overview

After mounting an SD card in the device you can use your computer to access and manage the SD card.

Important! If access to the external SD card is not available, download and install the USB drivers.

microSD Icon Indicators

The following icons show your microSD card connection status at a glance:



- the card can now safely be removed.



- the card is being prepared for use and for mounting.



- the card has been improperly removed.

Important! DO NOT remove a microSD card while the device is accessing or transferring files. Doing so will result in loss or damage of data. Make sure your battery is fully charged before using the microSD card. Your data may become damaged or lost if the battery runs out while you are using the microSD card.

Mounting the SD Card

To store photos, music, videos, and other applications. You must mount (install) the SD card prior to use. Mounting the SD card establishes a USB connection with your computer.

Important! You must enable USB storage to mount the SD card.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Storage**.
2. Tap **Mount SD card**.

Communicating with the SD card

1. Insert the SD card into the external, SD card slot.
(For more information, refer to “*Installing the microSD Memory Card*” on page 11.)
2. Verify the card is properly mounted.

Note: Your device is configured to be used as a storage/media device by default. If it does not respond properly, you will need to verify the Debugging mode is not enabled.

3. Configure the device for USB storage mode connection by verifying Debugging mode is not enabled:
 - Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Developer options**.
 - Remove a check mark from the **USB debugging** field, if present.
 - For more information, refer to “*USB Debugging*” on page 282.
4. Connect the USB cable to the device and connect the cable to the computer.

5. Confirm the new mounted drive appears as a new drive on your computer. As soon as the connection is established a drive letter is assigned to the phone's storage device.
6. To disconnect the new drive, simply remove the USB cable from your device.

Unmounting the SD card

Unmounting the SD card prevents corruption and damage to the SD card while removing it from the slot.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Storage**.
2. Tap **Unmount SD card** → **OK**.
3. After the “SD card will be unmounted” message displays and the **Mount SD card** now appears in the menu list, remove the SD card. For more information, refer to “Removing the microSD Memory Card” on page 12.

SD card Memory Status

To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Storage**. The available memory displays under both the Total space and SD card headings.

Erasing Files from the SD card

To erase files from the SD card using the device:

1. Ensure the SD card is mounted. For more information, refer to “Unmounting the SD card” on page 64.
2. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Storage** → **Mount SD card**.
3. Tap **Format SD card** → **Format SD card** → **Delete all** to format the SD card. The SD card formats and erases all the data stored on it.

Factory Data Reset

From this menu you can reset your phone and sound settings to the factory default settings.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Factory data reset**. This action erases all data from your device except current system software and bundled applications, or SD card files such as music or photos.

Note: This feature provides an option to format the internal USB storage, not the microSD card.

3. Tap **Reset device → Delete all**.

Section 4: Call Functions and Contacts List

This section describes features and functionality associated with making or answering calls, and the Contacts list, which is used to store contact information.

Displaying Your Phone Number

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **About device** → **Status**. Your phone number displays in the **My phone number** field.

Note: The device's **Settings** menu can also be activated by pressing  and then tapping  (**Apps**) →  (**Settings**).

Making a Call

You can store phone numbers that are regularly used to the SIM card or to the device's memory. These entries are referred to as the **Contacts list**.

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Enter the phone number and then tap .

- If you make a mistake while dialing, tap  to clear the last digit. Touch and hold  to clear the entire sequence.

Note: When you activate the **Auto redial** option in the Call settings menu, the device automatically redials up to 10 times when the person does not answer the call or is already on the phone, provided your call is not sent to voicemail.

Note: If your screen goes black during your interaction with the device (Launching Keypad, etc.), you might be accidentally swiping over the front sensors.

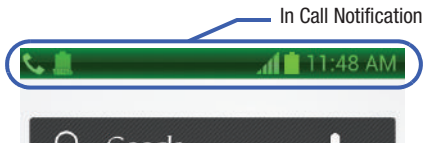
Quick Dialing a Number from the Contacts List

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Contacts**).
2. Locate a contact from the list.
3. In a single motion, touch and drag your finger over the number by going to the right. This action places a call to the recipient.

Running a Call in the Background

If you exit the current call screen and return to the Home screen, you are visually notified that you are still on an active call by the green phone icon within the Status bar.

This is the best way to stay on your current call and do something else (multi-task) such as access the Contacts list, view a recent email, locate a picture, etc..



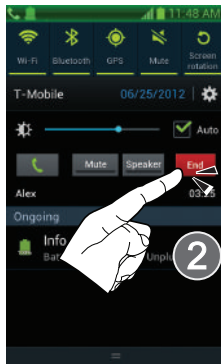
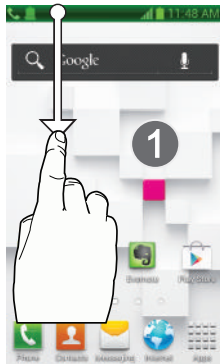
Ending a Call

- Briefly tap  key to end the call.

Note: To redial a recent number, tap  at the end of the call or locate the number from the Logs list, tap the entry and tap **Call**.

Ending a Call from the Status Bar

1. From an active call, you can launch a separate application or return to the Home screen. The current call is kept active in the background.
2. Tap the Status bar to reveal the Notification screen, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notification screen (1).
3. Tap **End** to end the currently active call (2).



Making Emergency Calls

If you do not have a SIM card installed the first time you turn on the phone, the **Insert SIM card to make calls** message displays and an animated tutorial shows you how to install the SIM card.

Without a SIM card, you can only make an emergency call with the phone; normal cell phone service is not available.

Making an Emergency Call Without a SIM card installed

1. Tap **Emergency call** from the on-screen display to make an emergency call.
2. Enter 9-1-1 and tap . Complete your call. During this type of call, you will have access to the Speaker mode, Keypad, and End Call features.

Note: Selecting Location consent may drain battery power. For more information, refer to “*Power Saving Mode*” on page 258.

3. Tap  to exit this calling mode.

Making an Emergency Call With a SIM card installed

The Emergency calling mode makes redialing an emergency number a 1-tap process. Before you can resume normal calling operations, you should first exit this mode.

1. Swipe the Lock screen to unlock the device.
2. Press  and then tap .
3. Enter the emergency number (ex: 911) and then tap .
4. Complete your call. During this type of call, you will have access to the Speaker mode, Keypad, and End Call features.
 - After completing your emergency call,  appears in the Notification area until you exit the Emergency calling mode.

Note: This mode can drain your battery power more rapidly than a normal calling mode.

5. At the Emergency Callback screen:

- Tap  to callback 911 with a single tap.
- Touch and slide  to return to the Home screen while still remaining in the Emergency calling mode. This allows you to access other applications while staying in this mode.
- Touch and slide  to exit the Emergency calling mode.

Dialing Options

When you enter numbers on the Keypad, you will see three on-screen options.

From the keypad screen, use one of the following options:

- **Voice Mail** () to access your Voice Mail service.
- **Call** () to call the entered number.
- **Delete** () to delete digits from the current number.

To view additional dialing options:

- Tap :
 - **Send message** to send the current caller a text message while still maintaining the current call active.
 - **Add to Contacts** to add the current number to either a new or existing Contacts entry.
 - **Speed dial setting** to access the Speed Dialing menu where you can assign a speed dial location to a current Contacts entry.
 - **Add 2-sec pause** to insert a two-second pause to enter a 2-second delay within a number string (the phone continues dialing after 2 seconds without any additional keys being pressed).
 - **Add wait** to insert a hard pause within the number string (the phone waits for your input). A wait requires that any consecutive numbers be manually sent by tapping **Yes**.
 - **Call settings** to provide you access to the Call settings screen. For more information, refer to “*Call Settings*” on page 247.

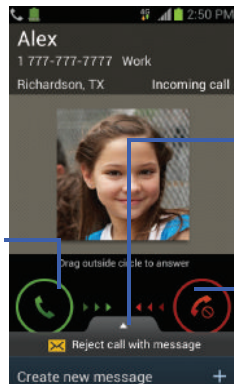
Answering a Call

When somebody calls you, the phone rings and displays the incoming call image. The caller's phone number, picture, or name if stored in Contacts List, displays.

- At the incoming call screen:
 - Touch and slide  to answer the call.
 - Touch and slide  to reject the call.
 - Touch and drag the **Reject call with message** tab upward and tap a predefined rejection message or tap **Create new message** to create a new custom outgoing response.

Pressing the Volume down button mutes the ringer.

If the incoming call is from a number stored in your Contacts, the entry's name is displayed. You may also see the caller's phone number, if available.



Touch and drag upward to reject with a message

Touch and slide in any direction to answer the call

Touch and slide in any direction to reject the call

Managing Reject Calls

This feature allows you to categorize both known and unknown callers as rejected contacts. These Contacts are then added to your Rejection list which can be managed for individual entries from within the Contacts list or as a whole from the Call rejection screen.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Call rejection**.

3. In a single motion touch and slide  to the right to turn it on . The slider color indicates the activation status of the Auto reject mode.
 - **Off:** disables the automatic rejection feature. You must then manually reject incoming phone calls.
4. Tap the **Auto reject mode** field to configure your automatic rejection settings. Rejected calls are routed automatically to your voicemail. Choose from:
 - **All numbers:** enables the features for all known and unknown numbers, including those contacts that are not assigned to the rejection list.
 - **Auto reject numbers:** automatically rejects all entries assigned to the Reject list/Blacklist.

Adding numbers to the rejection list

Entries can be added to the list via either the Contacts menu or via the Auto reject list menu. The Contacts menu option assigns all numbers for an individual as rejected. The Auto reject list allows to assign individual numbers.

To assign multiple numbers as rejected via Contacts:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Contacts**).

2. Locate an entry and tap it to open the Contact Overview Screen (page 107).
3. Press  and then tap **Add to reject list**. All phone numbers associated with this entry are then added to the reject list.

To assign single number as rejected via Auto reject list:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Call rejection** → **Auto reject list**.
3. Tap  (**Create**) and either enter the phone number or select a Contact from your Logs or Contacts list.
4. Tap **Save** to complete the assignment.

International Calls

1. From the Home screen, tap  and then touch and hold  until the device shows “+” on-screen.
2. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the country code, area code, and phone number.
3. If you make a mistake, tap  once to delete a single digit.
4. Touch and hold  to delete all digits.
5. Tap .

Pause Dialing

You can dial or save phone numbers with pauses for use with automated systems, such as voicemail or financial phone numbers.

- **2 Second Pause** automatically sends the next set of numbers after a two-second pause. This is indicated in the number string as a comma (,).

- **Wait** sends the next set of numbers only after tapping . This is indicated in the number string as a semicolon (;).

1. From the Home screen, tap  and use the on-screen keypad to enter the phone number.
2. Press  and then tap **Add 2-sec pause**. This feature adds an automatic two-second pause.
3. Use the keypad to enter the additional numbers that will be dialed automatically after the second pause.

Tip: You can create pauses longer than three seconds by entering multiple 2-sec pauses.

4. Tap .

Wait Dialing

Inserting a Wait into your dialing sequence means that the phone waits until it hears a dial tone before proceeding with the next sequence of numbers.

1. From the Home screen, tap  and use the on-screen keypad to enter the phone number.
2. Press  and then tap **Add wait**. This feature causes the phone to require your acceptance before sending the next set of entered digits.
3. Tap .
4. Once prompted to **Send the following tones?**, tap  to dial the remaining digits.

Redialing the Last Number

The device stores the numbers of the calls you've dialed, received, or missed if the caller is identified.

To recall any of these numbers:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap the **Logs** tab to display the list of recent calls.
3. Tap the name/number and tap .

Speed Dialing

Once you have stored phone numbers from your Contacts List, you can set up to 99 speed dial entries (2-100) and then dial them easily whenever you want, simply by touching the associated numeric key.

Note: Speed dial location #1 must be reserved for Voicemail use.

Setting Up Speed Dial Entries

Important! Speed dial location #1 is reserved for Voicemail. No other number can be assigned to this slot.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Keypad**.
2. Press  and then tap **Speed dial setting**. The **Speed dial setting** screen displays a virtual list of locations with the numbers 2 through 100.
3. Tap an unassigned number slot. The **Select contact** screen displays.
4. Tap a contact and select a number to assign it to the speed dial location. The selected contact number/image is displayed in the speed dial number box.

Changing a Speed Dial Entry Order

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Speed dial setting**.

Important! The number 1 is reserved for Voicemail and another number cannot be assigned to this slot.

3. Press  and then tap **Change order**.
4. Tap the current entry then tap the new target speed dial location.

Note: Tapping 2 existing speed dial locations causes the entries to switch positions.

5. Press  to exit the Change order screen and return to the previous screen.

Removing a Speed Dial Entry

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Speed dial setting**.
3. Touch and hold an existing on-screen speed dial location and select **Remove** from the context menu.
– or –
Press  and then tap **Remove**. Tap  (**Remove entry**) adjacent to the desired entry.
4. Press  to return to the previous screen.

Making a Call Using Speed Dial

You can assign a short cut number to a phone number in the Contacts List for speed dialing.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold a previously created speed dial location (numbers 2-100, or 1 if you are dialing voice mail) until the number begins to dial.
3. If you are not certain of the speed dial location, tap  →  → **Speed dial setting** and tap a speed dial number to view the assigned phone number.

Using S Voice

This is a voice recognition application used to activate a wide variety of functions on your device. This is a natural language recognition application.

This goes beyond the Google Search Voice Actions feature that simply recognizes Google commands and search terms. You can ask it questions (Is it raining in Dallas?) or give it commands (Show my where to find cheap gas).

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**S Voice**).
2. Read the on-screen disclaimer information and tap **Confirm** to continue.
3. Review the Terms of service and tap **Agree** to continue.
4. Navigate through the following on-screen tutorial screens by reading the information and tapping **Next**, or tap **Skip** to continue without reading the information.
5. Wake up the application by repeating the phrase **Hi Galaxy**.

Note: The wake-up command/phrase can be changed from “Hi Galaxy” to anything else. For more information, refer to “*Samsung Unlock Options*” on page 267.

6. Tap  (**Speak**) if the device does not hear you or to give it a command.

Example 1:

- I want to find the best pizza online.
- Tap  and say “Find me the best Pizza”. This launches an Internet search.

Example 2:

- I want to find the nearest gas station.
- Tap  and say “Find the nearest gas station”. This launches a list of nearest matches. Tap the phone icon to call the entry or tap the name to launch the Map application and have the device indicate where the entry is in relation to your current position.

Wi-Fi Calling

Wi-Fi Calling is a free feature for T-Mobile customers using this device with the new ISIM card. Wi-Fi Calling is an excellent solution for coverage issues in and around the home or wherever cellular coverage is limited. Minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.

The benefits of Wi-Fi Calling include the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling provides a coverage option to improve upon your current in-home coverage experience
- Wi-Fi Calling works anywhere there is a Wi-Fi signal available

Important! A new SIM card must be installed within the device prior to using this feature. Wi-Fi must first be active and communicating prior to launching Wi-Fi Calling.

Note: This feature is active by default. If you are in an active Wi-Fi call and go out of range of your Wi-Fi, the call will be dropped.

Activating Wi-Fi

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**.
2. Locate the **Wi-Fi** field and in a single motion touch and slide  to the right to turn it on . The slider color indicates the activation status.

3. Select a Wi-Fi network from the list of available networks. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete connection.



Wi-Fi Connected

Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Wi-Fi Communication Issue

Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.

Note: To avoid international data roaming fees when using Wi-Fi calling when outside the United States, the Data Roaming feature on your device must be turned off.

Note: With certain rate plans, minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.

Activating Wi-Fi Calling

1. Ensure that the **Wi-Fi connected** icon displays on the status bar.
 - If prompted with an on-screen “Did you know your phone can make calls over Wi-Fi” popup, tap **Learn** and follow the remaining on-screen instructions. Tap **Next** → and tap **Done**.
2. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Wi-Fi Calling**. The feature is active when there is a green check mark in the adjacent field.
3. If  (**Missing 911 Address**) displays in the Status Bar, follow these steps to provide 911 an address for emergency situations:
 - Log into my.t-mobile.com.
 - Click on **Profile** and edit the **Edit customer information**.
 - Enter your emergency location information and complete the online registration.
4. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Wi-Fi Calling Settings**.

5. Tap **Connection Preferences** and select a preference for use by the Wi-Fi Calling feature:
 - **Wi-Fi Preferred:** Wi-Fi network is preferred over cellular network when making calls. Calling requires you to stay in the Wi-Fi range.
 - **Wi-Fi Only:** Wi-Fi network is required for making calls. Calling requires you to stay in the Wi-Fi range.
 - **Cellular Preferred:** The cellular network is preferred over a Wi-Fi network when making calls.
6. Tap **OK** to save the setting.
7. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.
8. Tap **Wi-Fi Calling** to toggle off the feature, then tap it again to reactivate the feature and re-register your device with the T-Mobile Network.
9. Confirm  (**Wi-Fi Calling Ready**) displays in the Status Bar.

Launching Wi-Fi Calling

Note: Verify you are currently connected to a Wireless Access Point.

1. Ensure that the **Wi-Fi connected** icon displays on the status bar.
2. Confirm  (**Wi-Fi Calling Ready**) displays in the Status Bar.

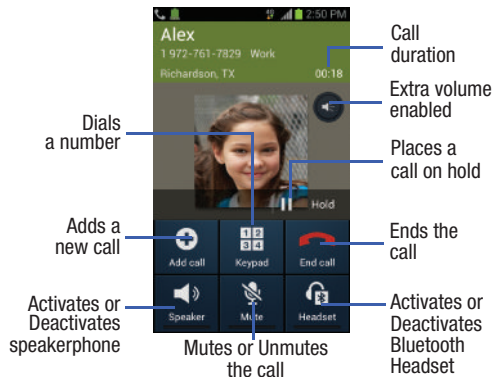
When	Action	Then
	Displays on the screen status bar.	You are connected to the T-Mobile network and can make Wi-Fi calls.
	Displays on the screen status bar.	The Wi-Fi calling feature is active and in use within an active call.
	Does not display on the screen status bar.	You are charged normal calling rate minutes. For more information, refer to “Activating Wi-Fi Calling” on page 76.

	Displays on the screen status bar.	There is an error in the use or 911 registration of the Wi-Fi Calling feature.
--	------------------------------------	--

3. Use the phone Keypad, Logs, or Contacts list to make a call.
4. Go to the dialer and make a call. Make sure  (**Wi-Fi Calling in use**) appears during the call.

In Call Options

Your phone provides a number of features that are available for use during a call.



Adjusting the Call Volume

During a call, use the Volume keys on the left side of the device, to adjust the earpiece volume.

- During a call, press the **Up** volume key to increase the volume level and the **Down** volume key to decrease the level.

— or —

Tap the on-screen **Extra volume** button to increase the incoming call volume even more than by just using the volume keys.

- Enabled/disabled via the Call settings menu (**Call settings** → **Use extra vol. for calls**). For more information, refer to *“Configuring General Call Settings”* on page 247.

From the Home screen, you can also adjust the ring volume using these keys.

Placing a Call on Hold

You can place the current call on hold whenever you want. If your network supports this service, you can also make another call while a call is in progress.

To place a call on hold:

1. Tap **Hold** to place the current call on hold.
2. Tap **Unhold** to activate the call that is on hold.

To make a new call while a call is in progress:

1. Enter the new phone number that you wish to dial or look it up in Call history.
2. Tap **Add call** to dial the second call.
3. Dial the new phone number and tap .

To switch between the two calls:

- Tap **Swap**.

The previous In call number turns gray and displays On hold. The new active call displays a green background behind the number.

Turning the Speakerphone on and off

While on a call, you can use your Speakerphone by following these steps:

1. Tap  (**Speaker off**) to toggle the speakerphone on.
2. Tap  (**Speaker on**) to toggle the speakerphone off.

Tip: When the speaker is turned **On**, the color of the speaker is green. When the speaker is turned **Off**, the color of the speaker is gray.

Muting a Call

1. Tap  (**Mute off**) to turn mute on so the other caller cannot hear you speaking.
2. Tap  (**Mute on**) to turn mute off and resume your conversation.

Switching to Bluetooth Headset

1. Pair the target Bluetooth headset prior to your call.
2. While on a call, switch to the Bluetooth headset instead of speaker by tapping  (**Headset off**).
3. At the prompt, tap **Turn on** to enable Bluetooth if it is not already activated.

4. While on a call, switch back to the device speaker by tapping  (**Headset on**).

More In-call Options

During a call you can save the current caller's information to the Contacts list, or create a Memo.

Viewing the Contacts List

During a call you can look up a number in the Contacts list.

1. Press  and then tap **Contacts**.
2. Browse the Contacts list for the information you need.
3. Press  to return to the active call.

Creating a Memo During a Call

During a call it may be necessary to record information (a Note).

1. Press  and then tap **Memo**.
2. Use the keyboard to enter the note then tap **Save**.
 - If desired, press  and select a new memo background color before saving.

Multi-Party calls

Making a Multi-Party Call

A multi-party call is a network service that multiple people to participate in a multi-party or conference call.

For further details about subscribing to this service, contact T-Mobile customer service.

Setting up a Multi-Party Call

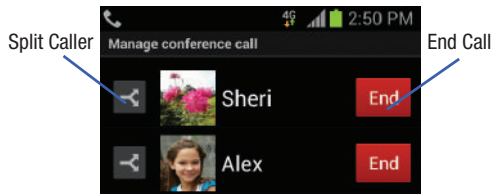
1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Dial the number for the first participant and tap .
3. Tap **Add call**, enter the second phone number and tap . The first caller is placed on hold.
4. Wait for the second caller to answer the incoming call and tap **Merge**. The two calls are now joined into a multi-party call and display in the order in which they were called.

Important! Multiple callers can be joined to a single multi-party line. Additional callers participate in a new Multiparty session and are held in conjunction with the previous multiparty call. You can swap or place each multi-party call on hold.

Having a Private Conversation With One Participant

When you have two participants in a multi-party session, it might be necessary to place one of those participants on hold so that a private conversation can be held with a single caller. While you are in a multi-party call:

1. Press  and then tap **Manage conference call**.
2. Tap  adjacent to the participants you would like to split from the current multi-line call. The list displays the callers in the order they were dialed.



3. Tap the participant to which you want to speak privately.

You can now talk privately to that person while the other participants can continue to converse with each other. If there is only one other participant, that person is placed on hold.

4. To return to the multi-party call, tap the **Merge** icon. All of the multi-party call participants can now hear each other.

Dropping One Participant

1. Press  and then tap **Manage conference call**.
2. Tap  to the right of the number to drop.
The participant is disconnected and you can continue the call with the other participant.
3. Tap  to end your conversation with the remaining caller.

Call Waiting

You can answer an incoming call while you have a call in progress, if this service is supported by the network and you have previously set the Call waiting option to **Activate**.

You are notified of an incoming call by a call waiting tone. For more information, refer to “*Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings*” on page 250.

To answer a new call while you have a call in progress:

1. In a single motion, touch and slide  in any direction to answer the new incoming call.
2. Tap an option from the Accept call after menu:
 - **Putting xxx on hold** to place the previous caller on hold while you answer the new incoming call.
 - **Ending call with xxx** to end the previous call and answer the new call.

Note: The new caller appears at the top of the list. The previous caller is placed on hold and appears at the bottom of the list.

3. Tap **Swap** to switch between the two calls. This places the new caller on hold and activates the previous call.

Important! The currently active call is displayed with a green background.

4. Tap **Swap** again to switch back.

Logs Tab

The Logs tab is a list of the phone numbers (or Contacts entries) for calls you placed, accepted, or missed. The Logs tab makes redialing a number fast and easy. It is continually updated as your device automatically adds new numbers to the beginning of the list and removes the oldest entries from the bottom of the list.

The Notification area of the Home screen (upper-left) displays phone notifications, status, or alerts such as:



Displays when a call is in progress.



Displays when a call was missed.

Accessing the Logs Tab

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Logs** tab).
2. Tap an entry to view available options.

Note: The Logs tab only records calls that occur while the phone is turned on. If a call is received while it is turned off, it will not be included in your calling history.

Each entry contains the phone number (if it is available) and Contacts entry name (if the number is in your Contacts).



Indicates all outgoing calls made from your device.



Indicates any received calls that were answered.



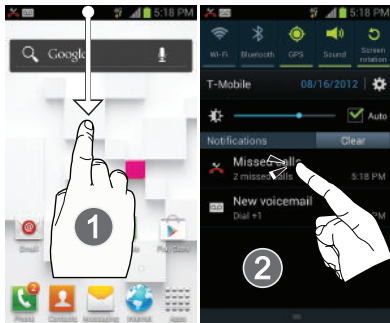
Indicates any received calls that were rejected.



Indicates a missed call.

Accessing Call log from The Notifications Area

1. Locate  from the Notifications area of the Status bar.
2. Tap the Status bar to reveal the Notifications tab, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications panel (1).
3. Tap the Missed call entry to open the Logs screen (2).



This list provides easy access to redial an entry, or you can also choose to access two types of history entry lists depending on how they are touched.

Call logs - Caller Overview

- Tap a contact entry name or number to reveal the **Call options** screen:
 - **Call**  allows you to redial the entry by name or number.
 - **Send message**  allows you to create a new text message to the selected entry.
 - **Time** provides the time and date of the call and its duration.
 - **Create contact** to save the number if it is not already in your Contacts.
 - **Update existing** to update an existing Contacts entry with the current number.
 - **Edit number before call** press  to edit the selected number before you place your next outbound call.
 - **Delete** press  to delete the Contacts entry.
 - **Send number** press  to send the current Contacts entry information to an external recipient.
 - **Add to reject list** press  to add the current phone number to an automatic rejection list. Similar to a block list, the selected caller will be blocked from making an incoming calls to your phone.

- Touch and hold an entry to display the entry-specific context menu:
 - **Call [Number]** to redial the current phone number.
 - **Send message** allows you to create a new text message to the selected entry.
 - **Edit number before call** to make alterations to the current phone number prior to redial.
 - **Send number** to send the current Contacts entry information to an external recipient.
 - **Add to Contacts** to save the number if it is not already in your Contacts.
 - **View contact** to view the information for the currently stored Contacts entry.
 - **Add to reject list** to add the current phone number to an automatic rejection list. Similar to a block list, the selected caller will be blocked from making an incoming calls to your phone.
 - **Delete** to delete the entry from the Logs list.

Altering Numbers from the Logs List

If you need to make a call from the Logs screen and you need to alter the number prior to dialing, you can add the appropriate prefix by prepending the number.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Touch and hold an entry to access the entry-specific context menu.
3. Tap **Edit number before call**.
4. Edit the number using the on-screen keypad or delete digits by pressing  to erase the numbers.
5. Tap  once the number has been changed.

Erasing the Call logs List

You can delete either an individual call log entry or all current entries from the Logs list.

To clear a single entry from the list:

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  .
2. Touch and hold an entry and select **Delete** → **OK**.

To clear all entries from the list:

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  .
2. Press  and then tap **Delete**.
3. Tap **Select all**.
4. Tap **Delete** to continue with the erasure.
– or –
Tap **Cancel** to stop the current process.

Viewing Missed Calls from Lock Screen

When you are unable to answer a call for any reason and your screen is locked, the number of missed calls are displayed on the Lock screen immediately after a call is missed.

1. Press  (**Power/ Lock**) to reactivate the screen.
2. Touch and drag the button (with the number of missed calls on it) anywhere on the screen. The Logs tab is then displayed.



Section 5: Entering Text

This section describes how to select the desired text input method when entering characters into your phone. This section also describes the predictive text entry system that reduces the amount of key strokes associated with entering text.

Your device comes equipped with an orientation detector that can tell if the phone is being held in an upright (Portrait) or sideways (Landscape) orientation. This is useful when entering text.

Your phone also provides several on-screen keypad text entry options to make the task of text entry that much easier.

Text Input Methods

There are four text input methods available:

- **Google voice typing:** provides a voice to text interface.
- **Samsung keyboard** (default): an on-screen QWERTY keyboard that can be used in both portrait and landscape orientation.
- **T9 Trace:** (as part of the Samsung keyboard and not shown as an input method), is also enabled as you swipe across the on-screen keyboard. Instead of tapping each key, use your finger to trace over each letter of a word.

- **QWERTY keyboard:** located below the screen, can be used at any time to enter text and override the current text input method. For more information, refer to “*Entering Text Using the QWERTY Keyboard*” on page 96.

The on-screen QWERTY keypad works the same in both portrait and landscape mode.

Selecting the Text Input Method

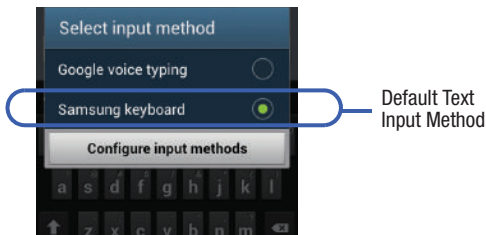
The Text Input Method can be assigned from within one of two locations:

Settings Menu:

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** → **Default** and select an input method.

Text Input field:

1. From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications screen.
2. Tap  (**Select input method**) and select an available input method.



Entering Text Using T9 Trace

T9 Trace is built into the Samsung keyboard. This method allows you to enter a word by sliding your finger or stylus from letter to letter, lifting your finger between words. T9 Trace uses error correcting algorithms and a language model to predict the next word and includes a touch predictive text system.

Enabling T9 Trace

When T9 Trace is enabled, the on-screen keyboard can be used to enter text by both tapping or swiping across the on-screen keys.

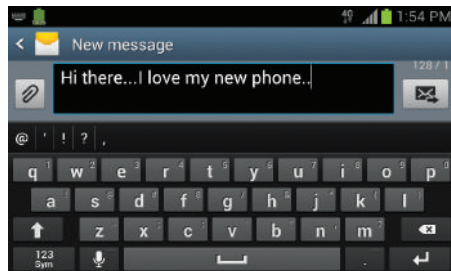
1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** →  (adjacent to the **Samsung keyboard** field).

2. Tap the checkmark box adjacent to the **T9 Trace** field to activate the feature. A green check mark indicates the feature is active.

Using the Samsung Keyboard

This QWERTY keyboard can be used to enter text in either a Portrait or landscape orientation. The only difference between the two orientations are the sizes of the keys.

From a screen where you enter text, rotate your phone counterclockwise to a landscape orientation. The on-screen QWERTY keyboard displays.



The Samsung Keyboard

This device has a built-in, QWERTY keypad (portrait mode) or keyboard (landscape mode). Using the QWERTY keypad/keyboard, you can type letter, numbers, punctuation, and other characters.

To use the Samsung keyboard you must first configure the settings to default to the Samsung keyboard.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** → **Default** → **Samsung keyboard**.
– or –

From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select  (**Select input method**) → **Samsung keyboard**.

2. The virtual keyboard is then assigned to the Samsung keyboard configuration for all subsequent text input.



Entering Text using Different Input Options

Although the default text input method with the Samsung keyboard is to use the on-screen keys you have other options.

Note: If you do not see the **Input Methods** button, touch and hold  (**Settings**) then select it from the available options.

1. From within an active message, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.

2. Tap  (**Input Methods**) to use the default Voice input method to convert your spoken words to on-screen text.

— or —

Touch and hold  to select from other input methods such as:

- **Handwriting** to launch an on-screen handwriting area that can be used to convert on-screen patterns (text) to text.
- **Clipboard** to launch the device's clipboard area from where you can select a current clipboard item to place in your current message.

- **Settings** to access the Samsung keyboard settings menu.

Changing the Text Input Mode in Keyboard

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.

2. With Samsung keyboard as your text entry method, select one of the following text mode options:

- **Abc**  : to use alphabetic characters from the on-screen keyboard. In this mode, the text mode button displays .

- **Symbol/Numeric**  : to enter numbers by pressing the numbers selecting them on the on-screen keyboard. In this mode, the text mode button displays .

There are up to 3 available pages of numeric symbols available by tapping .

Note: After typing an initial uppercase character, tap  to toggle capitalization.



All lowercase

Displays when the next character is entered in lowercase.



Initial Uppercase

Displays when the first character of each word is entered as uppercase but all subsequent characters are lowercase.



All Uppercase

Displays when all characters will be entered as uppercase characters.

By default, the first letter of a new entry is capitalized and the following letters are lowercased. After a character is entered, the cursor automatically advances to the next space.

Using ABC Mode in Samsung Keyboard

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
2. Tap  to configure the keyboard for ABC mode. Once in this mode, the text input type shows .

Note: After typing an initial uppercase character, the  key changes to  and all letters that follow are in lowercase.

3. Enter your text using the on-screen keyboard.
 - If you make a mistake, tap  to erase a single character. Touch and hold  to erase an entire word.
4. Tap  (Send) to deliver the message.

Using Symbol/Numeric Mode

Use the Symbol/Numeric Mode to add numbers, symbols, or emoticons. While in this mode, the text mode key displays .

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard. Rotate the phone counterclockwise to a landscape orientation, if desired.
2. Tap  to configure the keyboard for Symbol mode. Once in this mode, the text input type shows .
3. Tap a number, symbol, or emoticon character.
4. Tap  to return to ABC mode.

To enter symbols:

1. Tap  to configure the keyboard for Symbol mode.
2. Tap the appropriate symbol key.
— or —
Tap  button to cycle through additional pages.
 - The first number on this key indicates which page (1, 2, or 3) of additional characters is active.

Using Predictive Text

The predictive text system provides next-letter prediction and regional error correction.

Note: Only available when ABC mode is selected. Predictive text advanced settings are available only if the Predictive function is enabled.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** →  (adjacent to the **Samsung keyboard** field).
— or —

From within an active text entry screen, touch and hold  (**Input Methods**) and select **Settings**, then tap  to reveal the **Samsung keyboard settings** screen.

2. Set any of the following options:
 - **Portrait keypad types** allows you to choose a keypad configuration (Qwerty Keypad [default] or 3x4 keyboard).
 - **Input language** sets the input language. Tap a language from the available list. The keyboard is updated to the selected language.
 - **Predictive text** enables predictive text entry mode. This must be enabled to gain access to the advanced settings. Touch and hold to access the advanced settings
 - **T9 Trace** like using Swipe, allows you to type words by swiping between on-screen keys.
 - **Handwriting** enables the device to recognize on-screen handwriting and convert it to text.
 - **Voice input** activates the Voice input feature. This is an experimental feature that uses Google's networked speech recognition application.
 - **Auto capitalization** automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in each sentence (standard English style).

- **Auto-punctuate** automatically inserts a full stop in a sentence by tapping the space bar twice when using the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.
- **Character preview** provides an automatic preview of the current character selection within the text string. This is helpful when multiple characters are available within one key.
- **Key-tap sound** enables auditory feedback when you tap an on-screen key.
- **Tutorial** launches a brief on-screen tutorial covering the main concepts related to the Samsung keyboard.
- **Reset settings** resets the keyboard settings back to their original configuration.

Using Predictive Text

The predictive text system provides next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for users pressing the wrong keys on QWERTY keyboards.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** →  (adjacent to the **Samsung keyboard** field).

— or —

From within an active text entry screen, touch and hold  (**Input Methods**) and select **Settings**, then tap  to reveal the **Samsung keyboard settings** screen.

2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Predictive text** slider from  to the right to turn it on .

3. Tap the **Predictive text** field and configure any of the following advanced options:

- **Word completion** tells your device to attempt to predict how to complete the word you have started. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- **Word completion point** sets how many letters should be entered before a word prediction is made. Choose from 2 letters, 3 letters, 4 letters, or 5 letters.
- **Spell correction** enables the automatic correction of typographical errors by selecting from a list of possible words that reflect both the characters of the keys you touched, and those of nearby characters. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- **Next word prediction** predicts the next word you are like to enter. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- **Auto-append** automatically adds predictions to the word you are typing. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- **Auto-substitution** allows the device to automatically replace misspelled or miskeyed words. This option reduce “typos.” (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)

- **Regional correction** automatically tries to correct errors caused when you tap keys adjacent to the correct keys. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- **Recapture** sets the device to redisplay the word suggestion list after selecting the wrong word from the list.
- **My words list** allows you to add new words to the built-in predictive text dictionary.
 - Tap  (**Add word**) and use the keyboard to enter the new word.
 - Tap **Done** to store the new word.
- **Auto substitution list** allows you to create a word rule by adding words for automatic substitution during text entry (for example youve becomes you’ve).
 - Scroll up or down to review the current list of word substitutions.
 - Tap  (**Add word**).
 - Enter the original word that will be replaced in the **Shortcut** field (for example, youve).
 - Enter the substitute word that will be used in the **Substitution** field (for example, you?fve).
 - Tap **Done** to save the substitution rule.

4. Press to return to the previous screen.

Using the Google Voice Typing

This feature uses Google voice recognition to convert your spoken words into on-screen text.

Configure Google Voice Typing

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input**.

– or –

From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select  (**Select input method**) → **Configure input methods**.

2. Tap  (adjacent to the **Google voice typing** field).
3. Select a language by tapping **Select input languages** area.
4. Remove the check mark from the **Automatic** field. This allows you to select additional languages.
5. Select the desired languages.
6. Activate **Block offensive words** to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).

Using Google Voice Typing

1. From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select  (**Select input method**) → **Google voice typing**. The virtual keyboard is then removed and all subsequent input is done via the microphone as text to speech.
2. Speak into the device's microphone and watch your text being entered on-screen.
3. If the text is incorrect, tap **DELETE**.
4. Once you have completed entering your message, tap **Done**.

Entering Text Using the QWERTY Keyboard

Your device has a full, slide-out QWERTY keyboard. The keyboard is located beneath the display screen and is accessed by sliding it open. This orients the device's display to Landscape (widescreen) mode. With the QWERTY keyboard, you can type letters, numbers, punctuation, and other special characters into text entry fields or other applications as easily as on your computer.



To open the device and access the keyboard:

1. Rotate the device 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
2. Slide the top section of the device up to open, as shown in the adjacent illustration. When you slide it open, the display rotates to a horizontal viewing mode (Landscape).

Using the QWERTY Keyboard

In this section we'll cover the steps necessary to enter text using the QWERTY keyboard. Using your device's QWERTY keyboard is just like using any standard computer keyboard. The following keys perform special functions when entering text:

Alt

Alt: Allows you to use the alternate characters displayed at the top of the QWERTY keys. Examples: -, +, @, #, etc..

Shift

Shift: Changes the text input mode among Upper/Lower/Mixed case mode.

Sym

Sym: Allows you to insert a symbol by providing you with an on-screen page of available symbols.



Space: Inserts an empty space.



OK/Enter: Moves the insertion point to the next line in a message.



Messaging: Launches the Message compose screen.



Email: Launches the new email screen. If no email account currently exists, this button launches the Set up email screen.



Delete: Deletes the previous character, similar to the backspace key on a computer keyboard.

Entering Symbols

Most symbols and punctuation marks appear as alternate characters above the primary letters and numbers on the QWERTY keyboard. To access these symbols, press  and then press the appropriate key.

To enter symbols:

1. Position the cursor where you want the symbol to appear within your message.
2. Press  and then press the key corresponding to the symbol you want to insert.
 - For example, to enter “#1,” you can use the keyboard sequence shown below.



Section 6: Contacts

This section explains how to use and manage your Contacts List. You can save phone numbers to your phone's memory.

Accounts

From the Accounts menu you decide if you want applications to synchronize, send, and receive data at any given time, or if you want the applications to synchronize automatically. After determining how you want the accounts to synchronize, indicate which account to synchronize with your Contacts list.

1. Sign in to your Google account.
2. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Accounts and sync**.

– or –

From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Settings) → **Accounts and sync**.

3. If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide the **Accounts and sync** slider  to the right to turn it on . The slider color indicates the activation status.

4. Synchronize all accounts by tapping **Sync all**.
– or –
Tap  next to the account you want to synchronize.
5. Tap **Add account** to create a new account.
6. Tap an account type to add.
7. Follow the on-screen instructions. The selected account type synchronizes with your Contacts list.

Contacts List

Creating a Contact

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts List is your phone's built-in memory.

If existing Google and Corporate email accounts have been synchronized to your phone, these will be made available to your device during the creation of new entries. These new Contacts entries can be assigned or saved to synced accounts such as Phone, SIM, Google, or Corporate.

Your device automatically sorts the Contacts entries alphabetically. You can create either a **MobileLife Contacts**, **Google**, **SIM**, **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**, or **Phone** contact.

Note: Before you can save a contact to the Phone, Contact settings must be set to **Save new contacts to Phone**.

Important! The Google and Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync account types are only visible after creating an email account of those types on your phone.

- **MobileLife Contacts** contacts are stored remotely on the MobileLife servers and can later be retrieved even if your phone has been damaged or reset.
- **Google** contacts are shared with your existing Google account and can also be imported to your phone after you have created a Google Mail account.
- **SIM** contacts are stored within the SIM Card.

Note: SIM contacts only store the Name and Phone number for an entry.

- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** (also known as Work or Outlook) contacts are those contacts that are intended to be shared with either an Exchange Server or from within Microsoft® Outlook®.
- **Phone** contacts are stored locally on the device.

Note: If the phone is ever reset to its factory default parameters, contacts stored on the phone can be lost.

- **Add new account** lets you create a new account type. Choose from Samsung account, Google, LDAP, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or MobileLife Contacts.

Note: When storing an entry into your SIM card, note that only the Name, and Number are saved. To save additional information for a particular contact, such as notes, email, dates, etc., it is important to save that Contact into your phone's onboard memory.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Contacts**).
2. Tap  to create a contact.

Note: You can also add a new contact by entering a number from the keypad and pressing  and then tap **Add to Contacts** → **Create contact**. Continue with step 3.

3. Tap a destination type (**MobileLife Contacts**, **Google**, **SIM**, **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**, or **Phone**) (depending on where you want to save the new contact information).
4. Tap the **Name** field and enter a name for this contact using the displayed keypad.
 - Tap  to access additional name entries such as: Name prefix, First name, Middle name, Last name, and Name suffix.

5. Tap the image icon and select a photo for this contact. Selections are: **Picture** or **Take picture**.

Note: The label entries below can change and are dependant on the selected destination type (ex: the Other and Custom might not appear with an Exchange ActiveSync account destination type).

6. Tap the label button (to the left of the **Phone number** field) and scroll through the list to select a category such as **Home**, **Mobile**, **Work**, **Work Fax**, **Home Fax**, **Pager**, **Car**, **Company Main**, **MMS**, **Radio**, **Assistant**, **Other**, **Callback**, or **Custom**.
7. Tap a phone number field and enter a phone number.
 - Tap  on the QWERTY keyboard to remove a previously entered phone number.
 - Tap  to enter an additional phone number
 - Tap  to remove a previously entered phone number.

8. Enter additional information such as: **Email, Address, Events, Groups, Ringtone, Vibration pattern** or tap **Add another field** to input additional category information.
 - **Add another field** contains the following options: Phonetic name, Organization, IM, Notes, Nickname, Website, Internet call, or Relationship.
 - Use your finger to slide the page up or down to see additional fields and categories.
9. Tap **Save** to complete and store the new entry.
 - or —
 - Tap **Cancel** to delete the current entry.

To save a Number from your Keypad:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Phone**).
2. Enter a phone number using the on-screen dialpad.
3. Tap **Add to Contacts** → **Create contact** or select the Contact entry from the on-screen list.
 - or —
 - Press  and then tap **Add to Contacts** → **Create contact** or select the Contact entry from the on-screen list.

- If you're updating an existing contact, tap the entry from the list and proceed to step 5.
4. Tap the destination field and choose from: **MobileLife Contacts, Google, SIM, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or Phone** (depending on where you want to save the new contact information).
 5. Tap the **Name** and enter a name for this contact using the displayed keypad.
 - Tap  to access additional name entries such as: Name prefix, First name, Middle name, Last name, and Name suffix.
 6. Tap the image icon and select a photo for this contact. Selections are: **Picture** or **Take picture**.

Note: The label entries below can change and are dependant on the selected destination type (ex: the Other and Custom might not appear with an Exchange ActiveSync account destination type).

7. Tap the label button (to the left of the **Phone** field) and scroll through the list to select a category such as **Home, Mobile, Work, Work Fax, Home Fax, Pager, Car, Company Main, MMS, Radio, Assistant, Other, Callback,** or **Custom**.
8. Enter additional fields as desired.
9. Tap **Save** to complete and store the new entry.
– or –
Tap **Delete** to delete the current entry.

Note: For further details about how to enter characters, see *“Text Input Methods”* on page 87

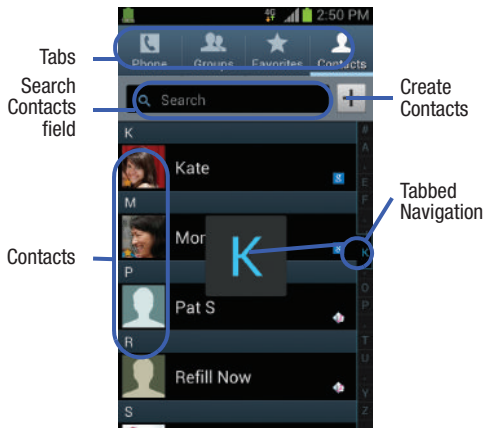
Finding a Contact

You can store phone numbers and their corresponding names onto either your SIM card, your phone’s built-in memory, or an external location (such as Google, Exchange, or T-Mobile Backup). They are all physically separate but are used as a single entity, called Contacts.

Depending on the storage size of the particular SIM card, the maximum number of phone numbers the card can store may differ.

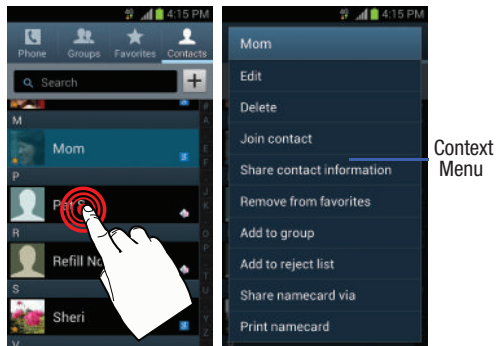
1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Contacts**).
2. Swipe up or down until you see the contact displayed.
– or –
Tap the **Search** field and begin entering the entry’s name. Matching entries are then displayed. This process filters through all of your current account Contact entries to only show you the matching entries.
– or –

In a single motion, touch and hold the letter tab area (on the right) until on-screen letters appear, then scroll through the list. You are then taken to that section of the Contacts list. Touch the contact entry.



Editing Contact Information

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a contact name from the list and tap  (Edit).
– or –
Press  and tap **Edit**.
– or –
Touch and hold a Contacts entry from the main Contacts list and then tap **Edit**.



3. Edit the contact information then:
 - Tap **Save** to complete and store the new entry or
 - Tap **Cancel** to delete the current entry.

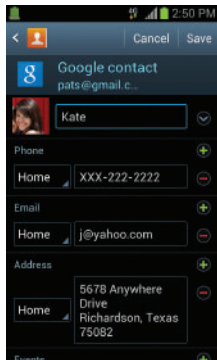
Adding a Number to an Existing Contact

1. From the Home screen, tap .

2. Touch and hold an entry and select **Edit** to reveal the Contact entry's details screen.

3. Tap a phone number field and enter a phone number.

- Tap  on the QWERTY keyboard to remove a previously entered phone number.
- Tap  to enter an additional phone number
- Tap  to remove a previously entered phone number.



Contact Details Screen

4. Enter additional information such as: **Email, Address, Events, Groups, Ringtone, Vibration pattern** or tap **Add another field** to input additional category information.
 - **Add another field** contains the following options: Phonetic name, Organization, IM, Notes, Nickname, Website, Internet call, or Relationship.
 - Use your finger to slide the page up or down to see additional fields and categories.
5. Tap **Save** to complete and store the new entry.

– or –

Tap **Cancel** to delete the current entry.

Deleting Contacts

Important! Once Contacts list entries are deleted, they cannot be recovered.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold a contact name from the list and select **Delete** → **OK**.

Contact List Options

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press . The following options display:
 - **Delete:** allows you to delete 1 or more of your contacts.
 - **Import/Export:** imports or exports contacts to or from the USB storage location, SIM card or SD card, you can also send namecards via methods such as Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
 - **Merge with Google:** allows you to merge all of your current Contact entries with your active Google/Gmail account. If several of your contacts are from other sources such as Corporate email, Internet email, Facebook, etc., this allows you to “back them up” or copy them to your Gmail account. Tap **OK** to continue or **Cancel** to exit.
 - **Accounts:** allows you to add and manage mobile accounts on Samsung account, Google, LDAP, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or MobileLife Contacts. This option also allows you to manually synchronize all of your current contacts with their respective accounts.
 - **Speed dial setting:** allows you to set up speed-dialing.
 - **Send email:** allows you to send an email using your Google account.
 - **Send message:** allows you to send a text or picture message.
 - **Contacts to display:** allows you to choose to only display contacts that are part of a customized list, MobileLife Contacts, Gmail, display contacts stored to your SIM card, Microsoft Exchange email, display contacts stored on your device, and/or display All contacts.
 - **Settings:** allows you to configure where you save new contacts to, or view your service numbers, or send contact information. Options include: Only contacts with phones, List by, Display contacts by, Service numbers, and Contact sharing settings. For more information, refer to “*Contact List Settings*” on page 116.

Contact Menu Options

1. From the Home screen, tap  .
2. Touch and hold an entry to reveal the context menu.

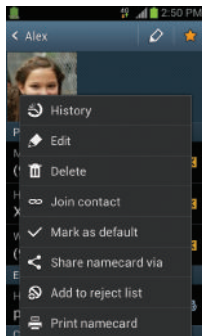
The following options display:

- **Edit:** allows you to edit the currently selected Contacts entry.
- **Delete:** allows you to delete the currently selected Contacts entry.
- **Join contact:** allows you to link the current contact to another current contact. Similar to a “see also” feature. If you can't remember a contact's information, linking entries can help you find the person you are looking for.
- **Share contact information:** allows you to send the current entry info via text message.
- **Add to favorites:** allows you to copy the current Contacts entry to the list within the Favorites tab.
- **Remove from favorites:** allows you to remove the current Contacts entry from the Favorites tab.
- **Add to group:** allows you to add the current Contacts entry to an existing group.

- **Add to reject list/ Remove from reject list:** allows you to add or remove the current Contacts entry to a list of automatically rejected incoming phone numbers.
- **Send namecard via:** allows you to send the current Contact entry's information to an external recipient via either **Bluetooth**, **Dropbox**, **Email** (Exchange or Internet), **Evernote - Create Note**, **Gmail**, **Messaging**, or **Wi-Fi Direct**.
- **Print namecard:** allows you to print selected information on a compatible Samsung printer.

Contact Entry Options

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap an entry to reveal the **Contact entry's Overview Screen**. This screen contains Name, contact numbers, email, and linked contact information.
3. Press  to reveal the context menu specific to this entry.
4. Tap an available option.



Contact Overview Screen

Joining Contact Information

Most people now maintain multiple email accounts, social networking logins, and other similar account information. For example, a Facebook account login name might differ from a corporate email account login because they are maintained separately and for different groups of people.

This device can synchronize with multiple accounts. When you synchronize your phone with those accounts, each account creates a separate contact entry in the Contacts list.

If one of your contacts (Amy Smith) has a regular email account that you maintain in Gmail, but also has a Facebook account under her maiden and married name, as well as a Video! chat account, when you merge those accounts into your Contacts list you can join all of her entries and view the information in one record.

Joining contact information makes sending messages easy. You can select any account email address or information all from one screen, versus searching multiple, individual screens to locate the desired account information.

Next time you synchronize your phone with your accounts, any updates contacts make to email account names, email addresses, etc. automatically update in your contacts list.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a contact name (the name you want to link to another entry) to reveal the **Contact entry's Overview Screen**.

Note: Typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.

3. Press  and then tap **Join contact**.
4. Tap the second contact entry (the entry in which to link). The second contact is now linked with the first and the account information is merged into one screen.

Note: The information is still maintained in both entries, but displays in one record for easier viewing when you link the contacts.

Important! It is the second contact image that is displayed for both, but the first contact's name that is used. For example: If Amy (original entry) is joined with Julie (second entry). Julie appears to disappear and only Amy remains. Tap the Amy entry (showing the Julie image) to view both.

5. Tap the main linked contact to view the contact information you linked. The contacts and information displays with an icon next to the contact name to indicate what type of account information is contained in the entry.

Unjoining a Contact

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a contact name (the account name from which you want to unjoin an entry). This reveals the details for entry.

Note: Typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.

3. Tap the **Connections** area.
— or —
Press  and then tap **Separate contact**.
4. Tap  next to the entry you want to unjoin and select **OK**. The contacts are “unjoined” or separated and no longer display in the merged record screen. Both contacts now go back to being separately displayed.

Marking a Contact as Default

When you use applications such as the Voice Dialer or other messaging type applications, the application needs to know which information is primary (default) in a contact entry list. For example, when you say “Call John Smith”, if you have three phone records for John Smith, the Voice dialer is looking for the “default” number or entry.

The **Mark as default** option marks one entry in a contact record to use as the default. This comes in handy when you have multiple entries for the same person.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a Contact entry.
3. Press  and then tap **Mark as default**. The Mark as default screen displays radio buttons next to the contact name, phone number, or other contact information.
4. Tap the radio button next to the entry information you want to be the primary information (such as name, phone number, or email) and select **Done**.

Note: If there are multiple phone numbers assigned to an entry, assigning one as the default will automatically dial that number when the contact is selected for dialing.

Sending a Namecard

A Namecard contains contact information, and can be sent to recipients as a Virtual Business Card (V-card) attachment using Bluetooth, Google Mail, or as a message.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Tap a Contact entry.
3. Press  and then tap **Share namecard via** and select a delivery method: **Bluetooth**, **Dropbox**, **Email** (Exchange or Internet), **Evernote - Create Note**, **Gmail**, **Messaging**, or **Wi-Fi Direct**.

The Namecard attaches to the selected message type and is delivered when you send the message.

Note: Email appears as an option only after an Internet or Exchange email account has been created.

Sending All Current Namecards

Rather than selecting once Contact entry at a time, you can send all of your current entries at once.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Import/Export → Send namecard via**.
3. Tap **Select all** to place a check mark alongside all currently displayed Contact entries.
4. Tap **Done** and select a delivery method:
 - **Bluetooth** to transmit the contacts to another bluetooth-compatible device.
 - **Dropbox** to upload the entries to your remote Dropbox web storage location.
 - **Email** to attach the contact cards to a new outgoing email (Exchange or Internet).
 - **Evernote - Create Note** to attach the contact cards to a new Evernote reminder.
 - **Gmail** to attach the contact cards to a new outgoing Internet-based email.
 - **Messaging** to attach the contact cards to a new outgoing text message.

- **Wi-Fi Direct** to transmit the entries to another Wi-Fi Direct enabled device.
- **Use by default for this action** stores your sending preference for this Send via feature.

Sending a namecard using Bluetooth

You must create a Contact prior to sending a namecard to a recipient. For more information, refer to “*Creating a Contact*” on page 99.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold the entry to reveal the on-screen context menu.
3. Tap **Share namecard via → Bluetooth**.

Important! You must activate Bluetooth to use this feature.

4. Tap the Bluetooth device in which to send this namecard. Bluetooth forwards the namecard to the recipient.

Copying Contact Information

Copying Contact Information to the SIM Card

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts list is your phone's built-in memory. This procedure allows you to copy numbers saved to the device's memory, onto the SIM card.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. From the Contacts List, press  and then tap **Import/Export → Export to SIM card**.
3. Tap **Select all** to choose all current phone contact entries.
– or –

Select a specific entry by touching an entry. A check mark indicates a selection.

4. Tap **Done**. The name and phone number for the selected contact is then copied to the SIM.

Copying Contact Information to the microSD Card

This procedure allows you to copy entry information saved on the device's memory, onto the SIM card.

Note: These must be contacts stored on the device. External entries (Google, Exchange, etc...) can not be transferred in this manner.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. From the Contacts List, press  and then tap **Import/Export → Export to SD card**.
3. Tap **OK** to choose all current phone contact entries.

Synchronizing Contacts

Syncing data from your managed accounts allows you to add and manage a new or existing contact from your online or remote accounts to your device. Prior to syncing, you must first have an active Google or Microsoft Exchange account with current Contact entries, and be signed into your account via the device.

With syncing, any Contacts entries (with phone numbers, email addresses, pictures, etc.) are updated and synced with your phone. For more information about syncing existing managed accounts, see *“Accounts and Synchronization”* on page 262.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Accounts and sync**.
2. Locate the email account containing the contacts you wish to synchronize.
3. Tap  within the adjacent account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
4. To synchronize Contacts, tap **Sync Contacts**. A green checkmark indicates the feature is enabled.

Note: The process of updating your Contacts tab can take several minutes. If after 10-20 minutes, your list has not been updated, repeat step 2-3.

5. Your **Contacts** tab then reflects any updated Contact information.

Note: Syncing of contacts requires you are logged into your Gmail and Corporate accounts via the device.

Display Options

The Display options menu allows you to choose which contacts to display. You can also choose to display only contacts that have phone numbers.

Note: Once a display filter has been selected, only those Contact entries are shown until the **All contacts** option is re-selected.

1. From the Home screen, tap  .

2. Press  and then tap **Contacts to display**. Select any of the following to filter according to the selection:
 - **All contacts** allows you to display all available Contacts.
 - **MobileLife Contacts** lists those Contacts currently found within the MobileLife account.
 - **Google** lists those Contacts currently found within the Google account.
 - **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** lists those Contacts currently found within the Exchange account.
 - **SIM** lists those Contacts currently found only on your SIM card.
 - **Phone** lists those Contacts currently found only on your Phone.
 - **Customized list** allows you to enable which account categories are displayed. For example, on Google contacts, you can filter which Contact categories are shown (Friends, Family, etc..)

Adding more Contacts via Accounts and Sync

When you synchronize applications such as Facebook, Twitter, MySpace, a corporate email account, or Google, using the Accounts and sync option synchronizes the data from the selected account type with your Contacts list.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**→ **Accounts and sync** → **Add account**.
2. Determine which type of account information you want to synchronize with your Contact list. Selections are: **Samsung account, Dropbox, Email, Facebook, Facebook (for syncing), Google, LDAP, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or MobileLife Contacts.**
3. Tap an account type to add.
4. Follow the prompts. The selected account type synchronizes with your Contacts list.
5. After synchronizing accounts you may want to link contact information. For more information, refer to *“Joining Contact Information”* on page 107.

To add Facebook content to your Contacts list:

You can now add your Facebook contact information, such as pictures, email, and phone numbers directly to your Contacts list. All of their current contact information is then migrated over to your phone. If a Contacts entry already exists with a slightly different name, separate entries are created and can later be linked (joined) together into a single entry.

Important! This process not only synchronizes your contact information but also your status, events, and more.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**→ **Accounts and sync** → **Add account**→ **Facebook (for syncing)**.
2. Log into your Facebook account:
 - Enter your account's access **Email** and **Password** information and tap **Log in**.
3. If prompted, configure any requested optional permissions.

4. Tap those contact settings you wish to synchronize (all are enabled by default). A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
 - Choose from: **Sync interval settings**, **Sync Gallery**, or **Sync calendar**.
5. Tap **Done** to complete the login and sync process.
6. Return to the Accounts and sync screen and resync this new Social Network account.

To resync Social Network Contacts:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap  within the adjacent SNS account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
3. Tap **Sync now**.

Note: From the main Accounts and sync page you can also tap **Sync all** to resync all accounts.

Additional Contact Options

Sending an Email to a Contact

Note: Contacts must contain an email account and address before you can use the Send email feature.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Send email**. Contacts that contain an email address display.
3. Tap the contact(s) to which you want to send an email. A check mark displays next to the selection.

Note: The selected contact must have an email as part of their details screen.

4. Tap **Done**.
5. Select an email account type.
6. Compose the email and tap **Send**.

Export/Import

For more information, refer to “*Copying Contact Information*” on page 111.

Contact List Settings

From this menu you can determine the default storage location for Contacts, display your phone's primary number, and view service numbers listed in your Contact list.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Settings**. Configure any of the following options:
 - **Only contacts with phones** allows you to display only those contacts containing phone numbers.
 - **List by** defines how the current list of Contacts are sorted: **First name** or **Last name**.
 - **Display contacts by** defines how the current list of Contacts are listed: **First name** (ex: Steve Smith) or **Last name first** (Smith, Steve).
 - **Service numbers** lists the currently available service numbers.
 - **Contact sharing settings** allows you either Send all namecards or Send individual namecards to an external device.

Groups

This feature allows you to add a new or existing contact to a call group. This group can be one of the already present groups (Family, Friends, or Work) or a user-created group.

Creating a New Caller Group

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Groups** tab).
2. Press  and then tap **Create**.
3. Tap the **Group name** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a new group name. For more information, refer to “*Text Input Methods*” on page 87.
4. Tap **Group ringtone** and select a ringtone for the group. Selections are: **Default**, **Ringtones**, or **Go to My files**.
5. Tap **Vibration pattern** and select a unique vibration pattern to be associated with this group.
6. Tap **Add member** and select members to be associated with this group.
7. Tap **Save** to store the newly created group.

Note: Some externally maintained group types (such as Google) can only be managed or updated remotely online vs via the device. These external types will not allow editing or deleting members locally via the phone.

Adding an Existing Entry to a Current Caller Group

1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Tap a group entry →  (**Add group member**).
3. From the available list of contacts, tap the contact(s) you want to add. A check mark displays next to contact entry.
4. Tap **Done**. The selected contacts are added to the group.

Removing an Entry From a Caller Group

1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Tap a group entry.
3. Press  and then tap **Remove member**.
4. Tap all of the contacts you want to remove from this group. A checkmark displays next to contact entry.
5. Tap **Done**. The contacts are removed from the group.

Editing a Caller Group

To edit a Group entry, there must be at least one member as part of the selected group.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Touch and hold a group entry then select **Edit group**.
3. Make modifications to the **Group name**, **Group ringtone**, or **Vibration pattern** fields. For more information, refer to “Creating a New Caller Group” on page 116.
4. Tap **Save**.

Deleting a Caller Group

1. From the Home screen, tap  → .
2. Press  and then tap **Delete**.
3. Select either **Select all** or tap the desired group.
4. Tap **Delete**.
5. Select either **Group only** or **Group and group members**.

Sending a Message to a Group

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  .
2. Tap an existing group, and press  and then tap **Send message**.
– or –
Touch and hold a group entry and select **Send message**.
3. Select the recipients of the new message (indicated by a green checkmark). If an entry contains multiple phone numbers, each must be selected individually.
4. Tap **Done**.
5. Type your message, and tap  (**Send**).

The Favorites Tab

The Favorites tab is a list of the phone numbers that have been designated as favorite contacts. For more information, refer to “*Logs Tab*” on page 83.

1. From the Home screen, tap  .
2. Tap  (**Favorites** tab).

Adding a contact to your favorites list:

1. From within the Favorites tab, press  and select **Add to favorites**.
2. Place a check mark alongside those current Contacts entries you wish to assign as favorites.
3. Tap **Done** to complete the process.

Section 7: Messages

This section describes how to send or receive different types of messages. It also explains the features and functionality associated with messaging.

Types of Messages

Your phone provides the following message types:

- Text Messages
- Multimedia (Picture, Video, and Audio) Messages
- Email and Gmail Messages
- Google Talk
- Google+
- Messenger

The Short Message Service (SMS) lets you send and receive text messages to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's message service.

The Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) lets you send and receive multimedia messages (such as picture, video, and audio messages) to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's multimedia message service.

Important! During the creation of a text message, adding an image, sound file, or video clip automatically changes it from a text message (SMS) to a multimedia message (MMS).

Message Icons on the Status Bar

Messaging icons are displayed on the Status Bar at the top of the display when new messages are received. For more information, refer to “*Status Bar*” on page 30.

Note: The Messaging application can also be accessed by pressing  and then tapping  (Apps) >  (Messaging).

Creating and Sending Messages

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Messaging) →  (Compose).
2. Tap the **Enter recipient** field to manually enter a recipient.
– or –
Tap  to select from one of the following:
 - **Favorites:** to select a recipient from the Favorites list.
 - **Contacts:** to select a recipient from your Contacts list (valid entries must have a wireless phone number or email address).
 - **Logs:** to select a recipient from a list of recently sent messages.
3. If adding a recipient from either Logs, Contacts, or Group, tap the contact to place a checkmark then tap **Done**. The contact displays in the recipient field.

Note: Delete any unnecessary members by tapping their name/number in the recipient area and selecting **Delete**.

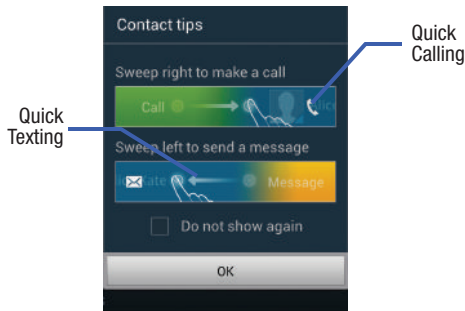
4. Add more recipients by tapping either the **Enter recipient** field or  and selecting recipients.

5. Tap the **Enter message** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a message. For more information, refer to “*Text Input Methods*” on page 87.
6. Review your message and tap  (**Send**).
7. If you have more than one recipient, the same text message is sent to all recipients in the Enter Recipients field.

Note: If you exit a message before you send it, it will be automatically saved as a draft.

Quick Messaging a Number from the Contacts List

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Contacts).
2. Locate an entry from the Contacts list.
3. In a single motion, touch and drag your finger over the number by going to the left. This action addresses a new text message to the selected recipient.



Message Options

Options before composing a message

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Messaging).
2. Before composing a message, press  from the main Messaging screen to display additional messaging options:
 - **Search:** allows you to search through all of your messages for a certain word or string of words. Use the on-screen keypad to enter a word or phrase in which to search, then tap . For more information, refer to *“Message Search”* on page 126.
 - **Settings:** allows you to access Messaging settings. For more information, refer to *“Messaging Settings”* on page 126.
 - **Delete threads:** allows you to delete any message thread. Select the messages to delete and a green checkmark will appear next to the message. Tap Delete. For more information, refer to *“Deleting a single message thread”* on page 125.

Options while composing a message

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Messaging**).
2. From within an open message, press  to display additional messaging options:
 - **Call**: places an outgoing call to the sender.
 - **Insert smiley**: allows you to add insert smiley icons images (emoticons).
 - **Preview** (only in MMS): allows you to add preview the MMS message prior to delivery.
 - **Add text**: allows you to add text items from sources such as: Calendar, Location, Contacts, and Text templates.
 - **Add to Contacts**: adds the current recipient as a new COnacts entry.
 - **View contact**: reveals the current Contact's overview screen.
 - **Add slide**: converts an SMS message into an MMS (Multimedia) message and allows you to attach an existing slideshow.
 - **Remove slide**: allows you to remove a previously attached slideshow.
 - **Add subject**: allows you to enter a subject.

- **Duration (5 sec)**: allows you to assign a duration for each slides to appear on-screen.
- **Layout(bottom)**: allows you to choose the message layout by selecting the text to appear at the top of bottom of the MMS.
- **Delete messages**: allows you to erase either select specific message bubbles or all current messages bubbles.

Adding attachments to a message

To add an attachment to your message, tap  (**Attach**) and select one of the following options:

- **Pictures**: allows you to tap an existing image from your Pictures list to add it to your message.
- **Take picture**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, take a photo with phone's camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.
- **Videos**: allows you to choose an existing video from the Videos list, then add it to your message.
- **Capture video**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, record a video clip using the phone's camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.

- **Audio:** allows you to choose an existing audio file from the Audio list, then add it to your message by tapping the circle to the right of the audio so that it turns green, then tapping **OK**.
- **Record audio:** allows you to temporarily exit the message and record an audio clip using the phone's microphone. It is then automatically attached to the message.
- **Memo:** allows you to add a note from your Memo app. Select an available memo and tap **Done**.
- **Calendar:** allows you to add an event from your calendar.
- **Location:** allows you to attach a thumbnail of a map showing your location.
- **Contacts:** allows you to tap on an existing Address Book entry, then add it to your message by tapping **Done**.

Adding Additional Text

You can copy text such as names, phone numbers, and events from your Contacts, Calendar, or a Memo.

1. While composing a message, press  → **Add text**.
2. At the Add text screen, select one of the following:
 - **Memo:** allows you to add an existing memo to your message.
 - **Calendar:** allows you to add the name, date, and time of a calendar event to your message.

- **Location:** allows you to add an address and the link to the location on Google Maps.
- **Contacts:** allows you to add the name and phone number of any of your contacts to your message.
- **Text templates:** allows you to add pre-defined phrases and sentences. For more information, refer to *“Text Templates”* on page 129.

The information is added to your message.

Viewing Newly Received Messages

When you receive a message, your phone notifies you by displaying  within the Notification area at the top left of your Home screen.

To read a message:

1. Open the Notification Bar and select the message. For more information, refer to *“Notification Screen”* on page 35.
- or –

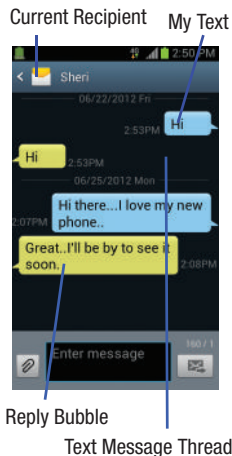
From the Home screen, tap  then tap the new message to view its contents. The selected message displays on the screen.

2. Tap  to play a multimedia message.
 - To pause playback of the multimedia message, tap .
3. In a single motion, touch and drag up or down the page to scroll through the message (if additional pages were added).

Message Threads

Sent and received text and picture messages are grouped into message threads. Threaded messages allow you to see all the messages exchanged (similar to a chat program) and displays a contact on the screen.

Message threads are listed in the order in which they were received, with the latest message displayed at the top.



To reply to a text message:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. While the message is open, tap the **Enter message** field and then type your reply message.
3. Compose your reply.
Your texts are colored Blue and your caller's replies are Yellow.
4. Tap  (**Send**) to deliver your reply.
– or –
Press  and then select one of the available message options (page 121).

To access message thread options:

- From the main Messaging screen, touch and hold the message to display the following options:
 - **View contact:** displays the Contact's Overview page.
 - **Add to contact:** begins the process of adding the new number to your Contacts list.
 - **Delete thread:** deletes the currently selected message thread.

To access additional Bubble options:

- Touch and hold the message bubble within an active message conversation to display the following options:
 - **Delete message:** deletes the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
 - **Copy message text:** copies the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
 - **Lock/Unlock message:** locks or unlocks the currently selected message bubble from being accidentally deleted.
 - **Forward:** allows you to forward the currently selected message bubble to an external recipient.
 - **Copy to SIM:** copies the currently selected message bubble as a single text message within the SIM card.
 - **View message details:** displays details for the currently selected message bubble.

Deleting Messages

Deleting a single message thread

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Touch and hold a message from the Messages list, then select **Delete thread**.
3. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to exit.

Deleting multiple message threads

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Delete threads**.
3. Tap each message thread you want to delete. A checkmark displays beside each selected message.
4. Tap **Delete**.
5. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to end the process.

Deleting a single message bubble

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Open a message to reveal the message string.
3. Touch and hold a message bubble, then select **Delete message**.
4. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to exit.

Deleting multiple message bubbles

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Open a message to reveal the message string.
3. Press  and then tap **Delete messages**.
4. Place a check mark on the individual bubbles targeted for deletion or choose **Select all**.

5. Tap **Delete** to erase or **Cancel** to exit.

Message Search

You can search through your messages by using the Message Search feature.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Search**.
3. Use the on-screen keypad to enter a word or phrase in which to search, then tap .
4. All messages that contain the entered search string display.

Messaging Settings

To configure the settings for text messages, multimedia messages, Voice mails, and Push messages.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Settings**.

The following Messaging settings are available:

Display

- **Bubble style:** allows you to choose from several bubble styles for your messages. Bubbles are the rounded boxes that surround each message.

- **Background style:** allows you to choose from several background styles for your messages.
- **Use the volume key:** allows you to change the text size by using the up or down volume keys.

Storage settings

- **Delete old messages:** deletes old messages when the limit is reached, rather than overwriting them.
- **Text message limit:** allows you to set a limit on how many text messages are allowed in one conversation.
- **Multimedia message limit:** allows you to set a limit on how many multimedia messages are allowed in one conversation.
- **Set text templates:** allows you to add, edit, or delete text templates.

Text message (SMS) settings

- **Delivery reports:** when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Manage SIM card messages:** allows you to manage the messages stored on the SIM card.
- **Message center:** allows you to enter the number of your message center where your messages reside while the system is attempting to deliver them.

- **Input mode:** allows you to set the input mode for your text messages. Choose from: GSM Alphabet, Unicode, or Automatic.

Multimedia message (MMS) settings

- **Delivery reports:** when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Read reports:** when this option is activated, your phone receives a request for a read reply along with your message to the recipient.
- **Auto-retrieve:** allows the message system to automatically retrieve messages.
- **Roaming auto-retrieve:** allows the message system to automatically retrieve while roaming.
- **Creation mode:** allows you to select the creation mode: Free, Restricted, or Warning.
 - **Restricted:** you can only create and submit messages with content belonging to the Core MM Content Domain.
 - **Warning:** the phone will warn you via pop up messages that you are creating a multimedia message which does not fit the Core MM Content Domain.
 - **Free:** you may add any content to the message.

Push message settings

- **Push messages:** allows you to receive push messages from the network.
- **Service loading:** allows you to set the type of service loading notification. Choose from: Always, Prompt, or Never.

Notification settings

- **Notifications:** allows you to see message notifications on your status bar.
- **Select ringtone:** allows you to set the ringtone for your message notifications.
- **Vibrate:** allows you to configure the vibration mode associated with message alerts.

Emergency alerts settings

- **Emergency Alerts:** allows you to configure emergency alert settings. You can enable/disable those alert categories you wish to receive. Choose from: Imminent extreme alerts, Imminent severe alert, and AMBER alerts.

Note: The Presidential alert can not be disabled.

- **Emergency notification preview:** allows you to play a sample emergency alert tone. Tap **Stop** to cancel the playback.

- **Alert reminder:** allows you to configure the reminder interval.
Choose from Once, Every 2 minutes, Every 15 minutes, or Off.

Emergency Alert Configuration

This device is designed to receive wireless emergency alerts from the Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS); which may also be known as the Personal Localized Alerting Network (PLAN). If your wireless provider has chosen to participate in CMAS/PLAN, alerts are available while in the provider's coverage area. If you travel outside your provider's coverage area, wireless emergency alerts may not be available. For more information, please contact your wireless provider.

Emergency Alerts allows customers to receive geographically-targeted messages. Alert messages are provided by the US Department of Homeland Security and will alert customers of imminent threats to their safety within their area. There is no charge for receiving an Emergency Alert message.

There are three types of Emergency Alerts:

- Alerts issued by the President
- Alerts involving imminent threats to safety of life
- AMBER Alerts (missing child alert)

Customers may choose not to receive Extreme Alerts, Severe Alerts, and AMBER Alerts.

Important! Alerts issued by the President can not be disabled.

To disable Extreme, Severe, and AMBER Alerts:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. Press  and then tap **Settings**.
3. Scroll to the bottom and select **Emergency alerts**. All alerts are enabled by default (checkmark showing).
4. Tap on an alert option to disable the alert and remove the checkmark.

Text Templates

This screen displays your available text message reply templates. This is a readily accessible list of both default and user-defined text snippets that can be used to quickly reply to incoming messages.

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. From the Messaging list, press  and then tap **Settings → Set text templates**.
3. Tap a message to immediately insert it into your current message conversation.

To create your own text template:

1. From the Home screen, tap .
2. From the Messaging list, press  and then tap **Settings → Set text templates**.
3. Tap  (**Create text template**).
4. Enter a new text string and tap **Save**.

Using Email

Email (or Internet Email) enables you to review and create email using several email services. You can also receive text message alerts when you receive an important email. Your phone's Email application lets you access and manage multiple email accounts simultaneously in one convenient location.

There are currently three main types of email accounts on your phone: Gmail, Internet-based email (Gmail, Yahoo, etc.), and Microsoft Exchange (Corporate email or Outlook®).

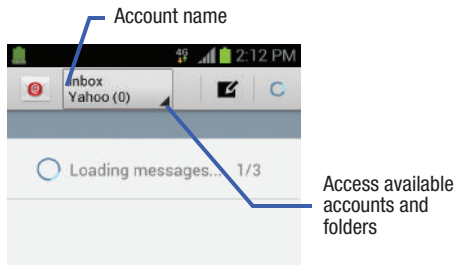
To send and receive email messages through an ISP (Internet Service Provider) account, or if you wish to use your device to access your corporate email through a VPN (Virtual Private Network), you will first need to set up an IMAP or POP account.

- **IMAP** (Internet Message Access Protocol) - This protocol is frequently used in large networks and commercial settings. IMAP4 is the current standard.
- **POP3** (Post Office Protocol) - This protocol is supported by most ISPs (Internet service providers) and common among consumer applications. POP3 is the current standard.

- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** - This protocol is frequently used with a large corporate email server system and provides access to email, contact, and calendar synchronization.

Creating an Internet Email Account

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Email).
2. If you already have other email account setup:
 - Open an existing email account, press  and then tap **Settings** →  (Add new account).



— or —

Enter your **Email address** and **Password** information.

Email address: your Internet email address.

- **Password:** typically your network access password (case-sensitive).

3. Tap **Show password** to display the password as you enter it in the associated field.
- Tap **Manual setup** to configure your connection settings manually (POP3 or IMAP). Follow the on-screen prompts and enter the information specific to your email provider.
4. Tap **Next**.
5. At the Account options screen, select the frequency which the device should check for new email on the server and tap **Next**.
 - Verify the **Sync Email** field is enabled. This feature causes your device to synchronize with the email server.

Important! If **Sync Email** is not enabled, your device will not automatically receive new emails.

- Tap the **Notify me when email arrives** field to receive new email notifications.
- Tap the **Automatically download attachments when connected to Wi-Fi** field to assist with faster access to large email attachments when using Wi-Fi.

6. At the **Set up email** screen, name the account and enter a screen name to identify yourself on this account.
 - The unique account name is used to differentiate this account from other email accounts accessed by your device.
7. Tap **Done** to store the new account.

Messages for this account display on the Inbox tab. You can also view Personal information for this account, Receipts (if you setup the account to return receipts), Travel information, and more (if available).

Opening an Email

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Email**).
2. Tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
 - Selecting **Combined view** allows you to view all the emails for your current accounts, managed by the application, to be listed on a single screen.
3. Select an email account and tap an email message.

Refreshing Email messages

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Email**).
2. Select an email account.
 - If you are already in an email account, tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
 - Select an available email account.
3. Tap  (**Refresh**).

Composing Email

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Email**).
2. Tap the account name field (upper-right) to open the complete email account list page.
3. Tap **Inbox** →  (**Compose**).
4. Enter the recipient's email address in the **To** field.
 - If you are sending the email message to several recipients, separate the email addresses with a comma. You can add as many message recipients as you want.
5. Press  and then tap **Add Cc/Bcc** to add additional carbon copy recipients.
 - Use the **Cc** field to carbon copy additional recipients.
 - Use the **Bcc** field to blind copy additional recipients.
6. Tap the **Subject** field and enter the email subject.

7. Tap the email text field and compose your email message.

- To add an attachment (such as image, video, audio, etc.), tap  **Attach** (from the top of the screen) and make a category selection.
 - Tap the file you wish to attach.
 - Tap  to delete the attached file.

Note: If you attach an image to your email, you have the option to resize it prior to delivery. Choose from: Original, Large (70%), Medium (30%), or Small (10%). Once chosen, tap **OK**.

8. Once complete, tap  (**Send**).

Configuring Email Settings

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Email**).
2. Select an account.
3. Press  and then tap **Settings** → **<Account>**.
4. Alter any of the following settings:
 - **Account name:** displays your uniquely created account display name.

- **Your name:** displays the name used in the From field of your outgoing email messages.
- **Signature:** Lets you attach a customized signature to the bottom of all outgoing emails.
 - In a single motion touch and slide  to the right to turn it on . A checkmark indicates that current signature is active for all new outgoing emails.
 - Tap the **Signature** field, change the current text, and tap **OK** to save the new signature.
- **Default account:** Assign this account as the default email account used for outgoing messages.
- **Always Cc/Bcc myself** allows you to include your own email address in either the CC, Bcc, or None fields. Lets you always receive a copy of outgoing emails.
- **Forward with files:** Lets you include attachments when forwarding an email.
- **Recent messages:** adjusts the number of on-screen messages shown in the current category list at any one time.
- **Show images:** allows you to view embedded images located within the body of the currently displayed email.

- **Sync Email:** allows you to enable automatic synching of this email account.
- **Email check frequency:** adjusts the time interval used by your device to check your email account for new email messages.
- **Auto download attachments:** allows the device to automatically download email attachments when an active Wi-Fi connection is detected. This process speeds up the process of downloading an emails attachments for offline review by not using a 3G or 4G network connection.
- **Size to retrieve emails** configures the incoming email size allowed to pass through to your phone automatically without user interaction. Emails with attachments larger than configured will have to be retrieved manually.
- **Auto resend time** configures the number of times to send the outgoing email from this account.
- **Email notifications:** Activates the email notification icon to appear within the Notifications area of the status bar when a new email (Gmail, etc..) is received.
- **Select ringtone:** Plays a selected ringtone when a new email message is received.

- **Vibrate:** Activates a vibration when a new email message is received.
- **Incoming settings:** Lets you specify incoming email settings, such as User name, Password, IMAP server, Security type, Port, and IMAP path prefix.
- **Outgoing settings:** Lets you specify outgoing email settings, such as SMTP server, Security type, Port, Require sign-in, User name, or Password.

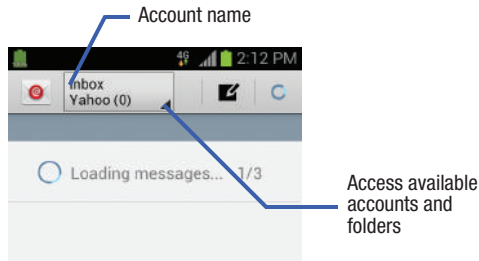
Note: Some the above options may not be displayed when using some Internet account types.

Microsoft Exchange Email (Outlook)

Your phone also provides access to your company's Outlook Exchange server. If your company uses either Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007, you can use this email application to wirelessly synchronize your email, Contacts, and Calendar information directly with your company's Exchange server.

Setting Up a Microsoft Exchange Email account

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Email).
2. If you already have other email account setup:
 - Open an existing email account, press  and then tap **Settings** →  (Add new account).



– or –

Enter your **Email address** and **Password** information.

Email address: your Outlook work email address.

- **Password:** typically your network access password (case-sensitive).

3. Tap **Send email from this account by default**, to make this your default email account for outbound emails.

4. Tap **Show password** to display the password as you enter it in the associated field.

Note: If selected, the **Manual setup** button changes to read **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**. If activated, skip to step 6.

5. Tap **Next**. Consult your Network or IT Administrator for further details and support.
6. Tap **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** (from the add new email account screen).

Note: If prompted with an on-screen notification that the connection that the “Setup could not finish”, tap **Edit details** to continue with a manual update of necessary information.

7. When prompted to provide additional detailed information within the Exchange server settings screen, enter an updated **Domain**, and confirm your **user name** and **Password** information.

Important! Remember to manually place the cursor in the correct spot and enter a Domain name before the “[Domain]\[user name]” entry. Most servers only provide a username.

8. Update or re-enter your **Exchange server** information within the appropriate field. This field can often be populated with incorrect or out of date information provided by your server.

- **Exchange Server:** your exchange server remote email address. Typically starts with **mail.XXX.com**. Obtain this information from your company network administrator.

Important! Do not accept the default entry as this is a guess based on returned information.

- If your network requires SSL encryption, tap the **Use secure connection (SSL)** field to place a check mark in the box and activate this additional level. Most often, this option should be enabled.

- If your network requires that you accept SSL certificates, tap the **Accept all SSL certificates** field to place a check mark in the box and activate this additional level. Most often, this option is not required. Confirm this information with your IT Administrator.

Important! If your Exchange server requires this feature, leaving this field unchecked can prevent connection.

9. Consult your IT Administrator if it is necessary to enable the **Use client certification** option.
10. With the new server information entered, tap **Next**.
11. Read the on-screen Activation disclaimer and, when prompted, tap **OK**. The device then verifies your incoming server settings.
12. If prompted, read the **Remote security administration** information and tap **OK** to accept the service and continue.

13. Adjust the various on-screen configuration fields and tap **Next**. It may take a few seconds for the next screen to load.

- Enabling the **Automatically download attachments when connected to Wi-Fi** option decreases the wait time to access large email attachments.

14. If prompted, read the **Activate device administrator?** screen and tap **Activate** to complete the email setup process.

Note: This process can take a few minutes. If the previous setup screen re-appears, **ignore it and do not alter any fields** during this process.

15. Identify your new work email account with a unique name (Ex: Work), then tap **Done**.

Opening an Exchange Email

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Email**).
2. Tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
3. Select an exchange email account and tap an email message.

Refreshing Exchange Email

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Email**).
2. Select an email account.
 - If you are already in an email account, tap the account name field (upper-left) to open the complete email account list page.
 - Select an available email account.
3. Tap  (**Refresh**).

Composing Exchange Email

- For more information, refer to “*Composing Email*” on page 131.

Deleting an Exchange Email Message

- Touch and hold an email (from your inbox list) and select **Delete** from the on-screen context menu.

– or –

With the email message displayed, tap  (**Delete**).

Configuring Microsoft Exchange Email Settings

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap  adjacent to the Microsoft Exchange account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
3. Toggle any of the available fields to force the device to manually resync the parameter.

– or –

From the current Email inbox listing, press  and then tap **Settings** → **<Exchange email account>** and specify the email settings you wish to synchronize:

- **Account name** displays the name used by the device to track the account.

- **Signature**: Lets you attach a customized signature to the bottom of all outgoing emails.
 - In a single motion touch and slide  to the right to turn it on . A checkmark indicates that current signature is active for all new outgoing emails.
 - Tap the **Signature** field, change the current text, and tap **OK** to save the new signature.
- **Default account**: Assign this account as the default email account used for outgoing messages.
- **Always Cc/Bcc myself** allows you to include your own email address in either the CC, Bcc, or None fields. Lets you always receive a copy of outgoing emails.
- **Forward with files**: Lets you include attachments when forwarding an email.
- **Show images**: allows you to view embedded images located within the body of the currently displayed email.
- **Auto download attachments**: allows the device to automatically download email attachments when an active Wi-Fi connection is detected. This process speeds up the process of downloading an emails attachments for offline review by not using a 3G or 4G network connection.

- **Period to sync email** to assign the sync range for your incoming and outgoing email messages between your phone and your external exchange server. How many days worth of email messages should the phone and server synchronize. Choose from: **Automatic, All, 1 day, 3 days, 1 week, 2 weeks, or 1 month.**
- **Empty server trash:** allows you to delete your email account's trash bin remotely.
- **Sync schedule** allows you to configure your email sync schedule.
- **Out of office settings** allows you to both activate/deactivate your email's out of office settings, and configure both the start/end dates and your outgoing message.
- **Size to retrieve emails** configures the incoming email size allowed to pass through to your phone automatically without user interaction. Emails with attachments larger than configured will have to be retrieved manually.
- **Period to sync Calendar** assigns a period for your phone to sync calendar events. Choose from: **2 weeks, 1 month, 3 months, 6 months, or All calendar.**
- **Security options:** allows you to enable several security options such as: Encryption, Encryption algorithm, Sign, Sign algorithms, Email certificates, and Security policy list. These security policies could restrict some functions from corporate servers.
 - **Security policy list:** lists the current email's security policy. These policies could restrict some functions from corporate servers.
- **In case of sync conflict** allows you to assign the master source on emails. If there is a conflict with the current email sync you can assign the server as the main source for all emails (**Update to device**) or assign the phone to be the main source and update the server accordingly (**Update to server**).
- **Auto resend times** enables the phone to resend an outgoing email a specified number of times if delivery fails. The default is 3 auto resends.
- **Email notifications** enables the phone to display a status bar icon when new email messages have been received.
- **Select ringtone** assigns an audible ringtone when a new or upcoming event is pending.

- **Vibrate** assigns a vibration when a new or upcoming event is pending.
 - **Exchange server settings** provides access to the Domain\user name, Password, and Exchange server settings.
 - **Sync Email** synchronizes emails between your device and the remote exchange server.
 - **Sync Contacts** synchronizes the contacts between your device and the remote exchange server.
 - **Sync Calendar** synchronizes your exchange calendar entries between your device and the remote exchange server.
 - **Sync Task** synchronizes your exchange tasks entries between your device and the remote exchange server.
4. Press  to return to the previous page.

Using Google Mail

Google Mail (Gmail) is Google's web-based email. When you first setup the phone, Gmail is configured. Depending on the synchronization settings, Gmail is automatically synchronized with your Gmail account.

Signing into Google Mail

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Gmail).

Note: You must sign in to your Gmail account in order to access features such as Google Mail and Play Store.

2. Tap **New** if you do not have a Google account.
– or –
Tap **Existing** if you have a Google account.
The Inbox loads conversations and email.

Opening Gmail

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Gmail).
2. Tap an existing email message.

Refreshing Gmail Mail

- From within the Gmail message list, tap  (**Refresh**) at the bottom of the screen to refresh the screen, send and receive new emails, and synchronize your email with the Gmail account.

Other Gmail Options

1. From the main Gmail screen, tap  (**Labels**) at the bottom of the screen to set up and manage Labels for your Gmail messages.
2. From the main Gmail screen, tap  (**Search**) at the bottom of the screen to search through your Gmail messages.

Composing a Gmail Message

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (**Gmail**).
2. From the Gmail Inbox, tap  (**Compose**) at the bottom of the screen to create a new message.
3. Enter the recipients Email address in the **To** field.

Tip: Separate multiple recipient email addresses with a comma.

4. Press  and select **Add Cc/Bcc** to add a carbon or blind copy.
5. Enter the subject of this message in the **Subject** field.
6. Tap the **Compose email** field and begin composing your message.
7. Once complete tap  (**Send**).

Viewing a Gmail Message

1. From the Gmail Inbox, tap a message to view the following options located at the bottom of the screen:
 - **Archive**  : archives the selected Email.
 - **Delete**  : deletes the currently selected Email.
 - **Labels**  : assigns a label to the current Email.
 - **Mark as Unread**  : tags the current message as unread and returns you to the Google Mail Inbox.
 - **Newer**: swiping to the right displays newer Emails.
 - **Older**: swiping to the left displays older Emails.

2. Press  to select one of the following additional options:
- **Mark important:** assigns the current email an important status.
 - **Mute:** mutes the conversation.
 - **Report spam:** reports the Email message as spam.
 - **Settings:** allows you to configure the General, or Notification settings.
 - **Help:** launches the browser and displays Google Mobile Help information.
 - **Send feedback:** sends feedback to Google.

Creating an Additional Gmail Account

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Gmail).
2. Press  and then tap **Settings** → **ADD ACCOUNT** and follow the same steps as referenced in the previous section. For more information, refer to “*Signing into Google Mail*” on page 139.

Google Talk

Google Talk™ is a free Windows and web-based application for instant messaging offered by Google. Conversation logs are automatically saved to a Chats area in your Gmail account. This allows you to search a chat log and store them in your Gmail accounts.

Note: Before using this application, you must first have an active Gmail account available and be currently logged in.

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  (Talk).

Note: If you are not already logged into Google, refer to the instructions for signing in on page 139.

2. Begin using Google Talk.

Note: The Network confirms your login and processes. This could take up to 5 minutes to complete.

Google +

Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+.

1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to “*Creating a New Google Account*” on page 19.
2. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Google+).
3. Select the account you want to use to sign in to Google+.
– or –
Tap **Add account** to create another account.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Google+.
5. Visit www.google.com/mobile/+/ for more information.

Messenger

Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your device.

1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to “*Creating a New Google Account*” on page 19.
2. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Messenger).
– or –
From the Google+ application, select **Messenger**.
3. Select the account you want to use to sign in to Google+.
– or –
Tap **Add account** to create another account.
4. When prompted, configure the Sync contacts parameter (Sync contacts or Don't sync) and tap **Continue**.
5. When prompted, configure the Instant Upload parameters as desired and tap **DONE**.
6. Follow any on-screen setup instructions.

7. At the **Messenger** screen, tap  to start a new message.
8. In the upper text field, enter a name, email address, or circle.
9. In the bottom message field, enter a message then tap  (**Send**).

From the **Messenger** screen, tap **Learn more** for more detailed information.

Section 8: Multimedia

This section explains how to use the multimedia features of your phone, including the Camera/Camcorder, Music Player, and how to manage your photos, images and sounds.

You can take photographs and shoot video by using the built-in camera functionality. Your camera produces photos in JPEG format.

Important! Do not take photos of people without their permission.

Do not take photos in places where cameras are not allowed.

Do not take photos in places where you may interfere with another person's privacy.

Note: An SD card is recommended to take pictures or shoot videos.

Assigning the Default Storage Location

Important! Too many users can overlook this storage location until something goes wrong. It is recommended that you verify this location or change it before initiating the use of the camera or camcorder features.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Camera).
 2. From the viewfinder screen, tap  (Settings) and scroll down to the **Storage** entry.
 3. Tap this entry and select the desired default storage location for newly taken pictures or videos. Choose from: **Phone** or **Memory card**.
-

Note: It is recommended that you set the option to **Memory card**.

4. Press  to return to the Home screen.

Using the Camera

Taking Photos

Taking pictures with your device's built-in camera is as simple as choosing a subject, pointing the camera, then pressing the camera key.

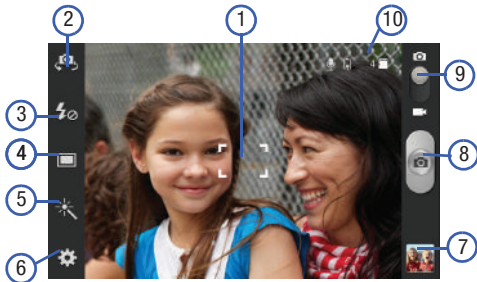
Note: When taking a photo in direct sunlight or in bright conditions, shadows may appear on the photo.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Camera).
2. Using the device's main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camera at the subject.

Note: Use either the Up and Down volume keys or spread/pinch the screen to zoom in or out. For more information, refer to “*Navigating Through the Screens*” on page 50.

3. If desired, before taking the photo, use the left area of the screen to access various camera options and settings.

4. You can also tap the screen to move the focus to a desired area of interest.
5. Press  (Camera key) until the shutter sounds. (The picture is automatically stored within your designated storage location (page 144). If no microSD is installed, all pictures are stored on the Phone.) For more information, refer to “*Camera Options*” on page 146.



Camera Options

Options are represented by icons across both sides of the screen. The following shortcuts are available for the camera:



Focus area: displays the area of the image used as the main focus area.



Self-portrait: allows you to set the front camera so you can take pictures of yourself.



Flash: allows you to set the flash options to Off, On, or Auto flash.



Shooting mode: allows you to set the shooting mode to one of the following:

- **Single shot:** takes a single photo and view it before returning to the shooting mode.
- **Smile shot:** the camera focuses on the face of your subject. Once the camera detects the person's smile, it takes the picture.
- **Panorama:** takes a landscape photo by taking an initial photo and then adding additional images to itself. The guide box lets you view the area where the second part of the panoramic picture should fall within.
- **Cartoon:** gives your photo a cartoon look.



Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the photo. Options include: None, Negative, Black and white, and Sepia.



Settings:

Edit shortcuts: allows you to set shortcut icons for the settings that you use the most.

Self-portrait: allows you to set the front camera so you can take pictures of yourself or video chat.

Flash: allows you to set the flash options to Off, On, or Auto flash.

Shooting mode: allows you to set the shooting mode. For more information, see Shooting mode description.

Scene mode: allows you to set the Scene to help take the best pictures possible. Options include None, Portrait, Landscape, Night, Sports, Party/Indoor, Beach/Snow, Sunset, Dawn, Fall Color, Firework, Text, Candlelight, and Backlight. Helpful tips are shown for each scene mode at the bottom of the display screen.

Exposure value: allows you to adjust the brightness level by moving the slider.



Settings (continued):

Focus mode: allows you to set this option to Auto focus or Macro. Use Auto focus for all other focal situations.

Timer: allows you to set a timer for how long to wait before taking a picture. Options include: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.

Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the photo. Options include: None, Negative, Black and white, and Sepia.

Resolution: allows you to set the image size to either: 5M (2560x1920), W4M (2560x1536), 3.2M (2048x1536), W2.4M (2048x1232), W0.4M (800x480), or 0.3M (640x480).

White balance: allows you to set this option to one of the following choices: Auto, Daylight, Cloudy, Incandescent, or Fluorescent.



Settings (continued):

ISO: determines how sensitive the light meter is on your digital camera. Choose from Auto, 100, 200, or 400. Use a lower ISO number to make your camera less sensitive to light, a higher ISO number to take photos with less light, or Auto to let the camera automatically adjust the ISO for each of your shots.

Metering: allows you to set how the camera measures or meters the light source: Centre-weighted, Spot, or Matrix.

Guidelines: allows you to turn the guidelines On or Off.

Image quality: allows you to set the image quality to: Superfine, Fine, or Normal.

GPS tag: allows you to turn GPS On or Off (also known as Geotagging). The location of where the picture is taken is attached to the picture. (Only available in Camera mode.)

Shutter sound: allows you to set the Shutter sound to On or Off.

Save as flipped: allows you to save any new images in a different “flipped” orientation.



Settings (continued):

Storage: allows you to configure the default storage location for images or videos as either Phone or Memory card (if inserted).

Reset: allows you to reset all camera or camcorder settings to the default values.



Image viewer: allows you to access the Image viewer and the various viewing options for a selected picture. The last picture you took, will be displayed as a thumbnail in the Image viewer icon.



Camera button: takes a photo when pressed in Camera mode.



Camera / Camcorder Mode: allows you to take a photo in various modes. Once you change the mode, the corresponding indicator appears at the top left of the display. Slide the button up for Camera, or down for Camcorder.



Storage location/Charge Status: indicates the current storage location (Phone or Memory card) and the charge state of the device.

Pictures and Videos Image Viewer Options

After you take a photo or record a video, you can access various options.

Photo viewing options

1. Tap a thumbnail to view the picture.

Note: If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.

2. The following options are available at the top of the screen:

- **Share via** : allows you to share the picture via Dropbox, Facebook, Picasa, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Evernote - Create Note, Gmail, and Email.
- **Delete** : allows you to delete the current picture.
- **Slideshow** : allows you to see your photos in a slideshow.

Note: If the slideshow option does not appear, rotate the device.

Video viewing options

Note: If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.

1. Tap a video to select it.
2. Tap  to play the video.
3. Press  for additional options.

Sharing Pictures

Pictures are the best way of remembering the moment, but an even better treat is to share them with others.

The S Beam Transfer feature allows you to quickly share a picture without using email or messaging.

- **S Beam Transfer** uses the NFC (near Field Communication) feature found on your device to transmit large files directly to another compatible device by **direct touch**.

This method of image transfer requires NFC and S Beam to be enabled prior to use.

For more information, refer to *“Using S Beam to Share Pictures”* on page 150.

Using S Beam to Share Pictures

This feature (when activated via NFC) allows you to beam large files directly to another compatible device that is in direct contact. These files can be larger, such as Videos, HD pictures, and other large files. You can beam images and videos from your gallery, music files from your music player, and more.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.
2. Tap the **NFC** field. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicating it is enabled.
3. Tap **S Beam** and make sure the feature is turned on.
4. If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide the **S Beam** slider to the right to turn it on .
5. On the source device (containing the desired image or video), tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Gallery**).
6. Locate and tap the selected image to open it in the preview window.

Important! Neither device must be in Lock mode or displaying the Lock screen. They must both be active and unlocked. It is recommended that the target device be on the Home screen.

7. Place the two active NFC-enabled devices back to back to begin.

Note: If the **Touch to beam** screen does not appear on the source device:

- Pull them apart
 - Verify the image is visible in the preview window on the source device (providing the file)
 - Place them together again
-

8. From the **Touch to beam** screen, tap the reduced image preview to begin the transfer. After a few seconds (depending on file size) the recipient will then see the transferred file displayed on their screen.

Camera Gallery Options

The Gallery is where you can access the Gallery of stored camera images.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Gallery**).
2. Select a folder location (ex: **Camera**) and tap an image to open it.
– or –

Touch and hold an image to place a box around the file and select multiple files.

– or –

Tap the upper-right camera to begin taking pictures that are placed in this folder.

– or –

3. From the top of the window tap  → **Slideshow settings** to configure several slideshow playback settings such:
 - **Effect:** allows you to configure the fade effects used when the image progresses from one to another.

- **Music:** allows you to assign the background music played during the slideshow. Turn on the feature and select from either **Choose music track** (Google Play) or **Music player**.
- **Speed:** assigns the length of time an image remains on-screen.

Note: If an option does not appear, rotate the device.

4. Tap **Start** to begin the slideshow.

Picture Options

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Gallery**).
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it in the Image viewer. Touch and drag a picture to the left to see the next picture or to the right to see the previous picture.
3. Tap the on-screen image and use either of the following image menu options:
 - **Share via** : allows you to share the picture via Dropbox, Facebook, Picasa, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Evernote - Create Note, Gmail, or Email.

- **Delete** : allows you to delete the current picture.
- **Slideshow** : allows you to see your photos in a slideshow or access the slideshow settings. Select **Slideshow settings** to configure the slideshow settings (Effect, Music, and Speed) then tap **Start** to begin the playback.

4. Press  to select additional options:
 - **Slideshow:** allows you take selected images and create a slideshow.
 - **Face tag:** allows you add embedded tag information about those in your image.
 - **Copy to clipboard:** allows you to copy one or more pictures to a different folder.
 - **Rotate left:** allows you to rotate the view of the current image in a counterclockwise direction.
 - **Rotate right:** allows you to rotate the view of the current image in a clockwise direction.
 - **Crop:** provides an on-screen box that allows you to crop the current picture. Tap **Save** to update the image with the new dimensions or tap **Discard** to ignore any changes.

- **Set picture as:** allows you to assign the current image as a Contact photo, Home and lock screens, Home screen wallpaper, or Lock screen wallpaper.
- **Buddy photo share:** allows you to tag people within an image and then share it with friends via email.
- **Print:** allows you to print the current image on a compatible Samsung printer.
- **Rename:** allows you to rename the current file.
- **Scan for nearby devices:** begins searching for compatible DLNA devices connected to the same Wi-Fi.
- **Details:** files details such as Title, Time, Width, Height, Orientation, File Size, and Path.

Assigning an Image as a Contact Photo

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
3. With the image displayed, press  and then tap **Set picture as** → **Contact photo**.
4. Tap a contact to make a selection.
5. Use the on-screen crop the image by dragging it around or out from its corners.

6. Tap **Done** to store the new image.

Assigning an Image as a Wallpaper

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) → .
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
3. With the image displayed, press  and then tap **Set picture as**.
4. Select one of the two options:
 - **Home and lock screens** assigns the current image to both the Home screen and Lock screens.
 - **Home screen wallpaper** assigns the current image to the home screen background. This image is spread across all available screens.
 - **Lock screen wallpaper** assigns the selected image to the background for the lock screen.
5. Touch and drag the crop box anywhere on the picture. Touch and drag the sides of the crop box to zoom in or out to create a cropped area.

6. Tap **Done** to assign the wallpaper image.
– or –
Tap **Cancel** to stop without updating the wallpaper image.

Editing a Photo

You can edit your photos using the optional Photo editor application on your device.

Using the Camcorder

In addition to taking photos, the camera also doubles as a camcorder that also allows you to record, view, and send high definition videos.

Note: To ensure the Camcorder can record the video, use an SDHC memory card.

Shooting Video

Tip: When shooting video in direct sunlight or in bright conditions, it is recommended that you provide your subject with sufficient light by having the light source behind you.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Camera**) to activate the camera mode.
2. Tap and slide the Camera mode button down to **Camcorder Mode**.
3. Using the phone's main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camcorder at the subject.

Note: Use either the Up and Down volume keys or spread/pinch the screen to zoom in or out. For more information, refer to “*Navigating Through the Screens*” on page 50.

4. Tap the Video key () to begin shooting video. The red light will blink while recording.
5. Tap the Video key () again to stop the recording and save the video file to your Camera folder.
6. Once the file has been saved, tap the image viewer, then tap  (**Play**) to playback your video for review.
7. Press  to return to the viewer.

Note: Zooming is not supported while recording Full HD video. Adjust to a lower resolution to regain this functionality.

Camcorder Options

You can change options using your keypad in capture mode. The following short cuts are available:



Self portrait: allows you to activate the front facing camera so you can take videos of yourself or video chat.



Flash: allows you to set the flash options to Off or On. When you set the flash to On, it stays on continually while you are taking a video.



Recording mode: allows you to set the recording mode to: Normal, which is limited only by available space on the destination location, Limit for MMS, which is limited by MMS size restrictions.



Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the video. Options include: None, Negative, Black and white, and Sepia.



Settings:

Edit shortcuts: allows you to set shortcut icons for the settings that you use the most.

Self-recording: allows you to set the front camera so you can take videos of yourself or video chat.

Flash: allows you to set the flash options to Off or On. When you set the flash to On, it stays on continually while you are taking a video.

Recording mode: allows you to set the recording mode to:

- **Normal:** is limited only by available space on the destination location.
- **Limit MMS:** is limited by MMS size restrictions.

Exposure value: allows you to adjust the brightness level by moving the slider.

Timer: allows you to set a timer for how long to wait before taking a video. Options include: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.



Settings (continued):

Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the video. Options include: None, Negative, Black and white, and Sepia.

Resolution: allows you to set the image size to either: 1280x720, 720x480, 640x480, or 320x240.

White balance: allows you to set this option to one of the following choices: Auto, Daylight, Cloudy, Incandescent, or Fluorescent.

Guidelines: allows you to turn the guidelines On or Off.

Video quality: allows you to set the image quality to: Superfine, Fine, or Normal.

Save as flipped: allows you to save any new videos in a different “flipped” orientation.

Storage: allows you to configure the default storage location for images or videos as either Phone or Memory card (if inserted).

Reset: allows you to reset all camera or camcorder settings to the default values.



Image viewer: allows you to access the Image viewer and the various viewing options for a selected video. Image viewer options are described in the following section. The last video you took, will be displayed as a thumbnail in the Image viewer icon.



Camcorder button: shoots or stops video recording when pressed in Camcorder mode.



Camera / Camcorder Mode: allows you to take a photo in various modes. Once you change the mode, the corresponding indicator appears at the top left of the display. Slide the button up for Camera mode or down for Camcorder mode.



Storage location/Charge Status: indicates the current storage location (Phone or Memory card) and the charge state of the device.

Accessing Videos

When you shoot a video, the file is saved in the Camera folder. You can view your videos immediately or view them anytime in the Camera folder.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).
2. Select a folder location and tap a video.
3. Tap a video icon to begin video playback.
— or —

Touch and hold the video icon from the main Gallery to select the video (indicated by a colored border) and display the following video menu context options:

- **Share via**  : allows you to share the video via Dropbox, Facebook, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, YouTube, Evernote - Create Note, Gmail, or Email.

Note: If an option does not appear, rotate the device.

- **Delete**  : allows you to delete the current video. Choose either OK or Cancel.

- **Slideshow**  : allows you to see your photos in a slideshow or access the slideshow settings. Select **Slideshow settings** to configure the slideshow settings (Effect, Music, and Speed) then tap **Start** to begin the playback.
- Press  to access the additional options such as:
 - **Rename**: allows you to rename one or more video files.
 - **Details**: displays video file information.

The Gallery

The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or caller image, and share as a picture message.

Note: If the phone displays a memory full message when accessing the Gallery, access **Files** and remove some of the media files from the folders, and then open the Gallery.

Opening the Gallery

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery). For more information, refer to “Camera Gallery Options” on page 151.

Note: If you stored your files in folders (directories) on the storage card, Gallery displays these folders as separate albums. The top left album contains all the pictures in the storage card.

Viewing a Video within the Gallery

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).
2. Locate your folder and video.
3. Tap  (Play) to playback your video.

Using the Video Player

The Video Player application plays video files stored on the SD card. This device is able to playback DivX videos.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Video Player). A list of available videos displays in the Video list.
2. Tap a video file to begin viewing.

Sharing Videos

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Video Player). After a few seconds, each on-screen video begins to cycle through a preview of the first five seconds of the clip.
2. Press  and then tap **Share via**.
3. Select a sharing option. Choose from: **Dropbox**, **Google+**, **Bluetooth**, **Wi-Fi Direct**, **YouTube**, **Evernote** - **Create Note**, **Gmail**, **Email**, and **Messaging**.
4. Select either individual videos or tap **Select all**. Confirm a green check mark appears atop your selected videos.
5. Click **Done** to complete the process or **Cancel** to quit.

Video Playback Options

During video playback, there are several available video menu options to choose from.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Video Player).
2. Tap a desired video to begin playback.
3. Press  and then tap an available on-screen option such as:
 - **Scan for nearby devices:** begins searching for compatible DLNA devices connected to the same Wi-Fi.
 - **Share via:** allows you to share the current video file with others by selecting a share method. Choose from: Dropbox, Facebook, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, YouTube, Evernote - Create Note, Gmail, and Email.
 - **Chapter preview:** displays an on-screen set of picons (picture icons) that preview a brief video preview of the movies various chapter markers.
 - **Trim:** allows you cut-off or trim the length of the current video.
 - Select **Trim** to store the new video.
 - Select **Trim original video** (save) or **Trim as new video** (save as).

- **Via Bluetooth:** allows you to send a copy of the current video to an external user via a Bluetooth connection.
- **Video auto off:** allows you to set a time-out values for shutting down the Video Player app after a set amount of time. Choose from: Off (deactivates the function), After playing, After 15 min, After 30 min, After 1 hr, After 1 hr 30 min, and After 2 hr.
- **Settings:** allows you to adjust the Video Player settings. choose from: Video brightness, Auto play next, Play speed, SoundAlive, and Subtitles.
- **Details:** displays details about the currently active video such as: Name, Size, Resolution, Duration, Format, and Date modified.

DivX Overview

This device is able to playback DivX videos. DivX Certified[®] to play DivX[®] video up to HD 720p, including premium content. If you try to play DivX VOD content not authorized for your device, the message “Authorization Error” will be displayed and your content will not play. Learn more at www.divx.com/vod.

Your device must first be registered to playback protected or purchased DivX content. DRM-free or unprotected content does not require DivX VOD registration.

Locating Your VOD Registration Number

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **About device** → **Legal information** → **License settings** → **DivX® VOD** > **Register**.
2. Write down your Registration code.
3. Tap **OK**.

Register Your DivX Device for VOD Playback of Purchased Movies

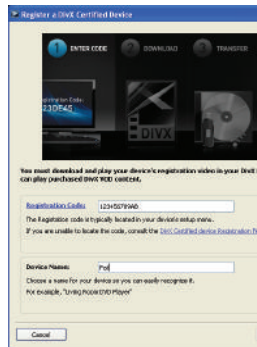
To play purchased DivX movies on your device, you will first need to complete a one-time registration using both your device and your computer.

1. Write down the DivX registration code that appears on-screen. Copy this 8 or 10-digit number down.
2. Verify you have the latest DivX software running on your computer. Download the free player (for your computer) from www.divx.com.

3. Open the DivX Player on your computer and from within the **VOD** menu, select **Register a DivX Certified Device...** You are prompted to log in or create a DivX account if your account information has not already been saved in DivX Player.

4. Follow the instructions in DivX Player to enter the registration code from step 2 and create a device nickname (ex: "Pat or Pat's Device").

5. Select a location on your computer to download the DivX registration video with the same title as your device nickname (ex: Pat.divx).
6. Follow the on-screen instructions to download the file and initiate the transfer process. You will need to place this video file onto your device and play it back.



7. Connect your device to the computer via USB and transfer this video. For more information, refer to *“Communicating with the SD card”* on page 63.
8. From the **Registration** screen (Transfer), click Transfer Video now and select the location of the microSD card or **USB** (the device) as the target destination for the registration video (created in step 6) and click **Start**.
— or —

Locate the created file, copy and paste it into the new drive letter corresponding to your device's storage location.

9. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (My files).
10. Locate your registration DivX video file and tap the file to play it. Once you play the registration file on your device, your registration is complete.
11. Return to the DivX VOD Manager screen (from within your computer's DivX Player) and confirm both your computer and your new device appears in the list of registered DivX devices.

Important! There is no special registration or configuration necessary to playback DRM-free DivX movies. Registration of your device is only required for playback of protected DivX material.

Media Hub

Samsung Media Hub is your one stop for the hottest movie and TV content. With hundreds of titles available, entertaining your family on the go was never easier. You can rent or purchase your favorite content and watch from any location. Featuring the stunning viewing quality Samsung is known for, Samsung Media Hub is your gateway to mobile video like you've never experienced it before.

You must have the Samsung Account application installed and registered prior to using Media Hub.

Note: Media Hub usage is based on service availability.

Important! You must be using an active Wi-Fi/4G connection to preview and download a media file.
The internal memory acts as a storage location for your downloaded rental or purchase.

Important! The Samsung account manages the access information (username/password) to several applications, such as AllShare Play, Chat On, and Media Hub.

Creating a New Media Hub Account

Before you can rent or buy media, you must first create an account. Enter the required information.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Media Hub).
2. Read the **Terms and Conditions** screen and tap the **I agree to the Terms and Conditions** check box.
3. Tap **Accept** to continue or **Decline** to exit. The Media Hub screen displays.
4. Press  and then tap **My Profile**.

Note: Your Media Hub account is managed by the Samsung account application. This application manages your user profile information.

5. If not already signed in, use the keypad to enter the required information, then tap **Create new account**. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete your registration for a new Samsung account.

– or –

Enter your User name and Password, then tap **Done**.

Using Media Hub

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Media Hub).
2. At the Media Hub screen, **What's New** is displayed with recently added media that you can rent or purchase.
3. The following tabs are displayed at the top of the screen:
 - **Home:** displays the Media Hub main screen.
 - **Movies:** displays movies that are available for rent or purchase. Scroll through the top navigation bar and select a movie category. The movies of that type will be displayed below.
 - **TV Shows:** displays TV shows that are available for purchase. Scroll through the top navigation bar and select a TV category. The TV shows of that type will be displayed below.

- **My Media:** allows you to view all of the media that you have purchased or rented. Tap a media entry to view it.
4. Scroll through the media listings and tap on an item you would like to purchase or rent.
 5. Tap tap **Buy or Rent**.
 6. Choose a payment method and then follow the on-screen instructions. The media stores to the **My Media** folder.

Media Hub Notices

- Any media item (Media Content) may be rented or purchased after you create an account in Media Hub.
- Media Content that is downloaded may be viewed concurrently on up to five (5) devices with Media Hub that are also registered to the same account.
- You may choose to remove a device from your account no more than once every 90 days.

- You may remove Media Content from a device as many times as you'd like. You will have the ability to re-download the Media Content at a later point in time subject to content re-download availability and studio permissions.
- You **MUST** be in network coverage to license Media Content you have acquired through the Service.
- You can use 3G, 4G, or Wi-Fi connectivity in order to download Media Content.
- Unlike purchased Media Content, rented Media Content will be viewable on only 1 device in your account.
- Media Content is downloaded and saved to internal memory. No SD Card included out of box.
- Your Media Content may pause/stop or not download in networks where there is a weak signal.
- You may begin watching downloaded Media Content as soon as a) license acquisition has occurred and b) sufficient amount of the Media Content has been buffered.

- You must finish watching rented Media Content within 24 consecutive hours of start of playback.
 - Stopping, pausing or restarting rented Media Content does not extend the available viewing time.
 - In no event will rented Media Content be available for a period of more than thirty (30) days (or shorter on a title-by-title basis) after the Media Content has been rented (e.g., if you begin viewing rented Media Content on the 29th day after the rental transaction, but do not finish viewing the entire title, that rented Media Content may not be available for the entire twenty-four (24) consecutive hour period if such period would extend the viewable time beyond the thirty (30) day rental window).
- You cannot play any media content downloaded from Media Hub through any output on your mobile phone, including All Share.

Play Movies

This application allows you to connect to the Play Store, download a movie and then watch it instantly.

Choose from thousands of movies, including new releases and HD titles in the Play Store and stream them instantly on your Android phone or tablet.

Movies, previously rented via the Play Store are automatically added to your My Movies library across your devices.

Learn more about Google Play Movies at:

<http://play.google.com/about/movies>.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Movies).
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. A list of videos sorted on the SD card displays in the Video list.
3. Following the on-screen instructions for renting and viewing movies.
4. Tap the **MY RENTALS** tab to view movies you have rented.
5. Tap the **PERSONAL VIDEOS** tab to view movies you have on your phone or memory card.

Play Music

Also known as Google Music, allows you to browse, shop, and playback songs purchased from the Play Store. The music you choose is automatically stored in your Google Music library and instantly ready to play or download.

- Access the new music tab from within your Play Store application.

The Music application contains a music player that plays music and other audio files that you copy from your computer.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).

The Music app searches both your online library and your device's internal storage for music and playlists; this can take from a few seconds to several minutes, depending on the amount of new music added since you last opened the application. It then displays a carousel view of your new and recent music, organized by album.

2. If prompted, follow the on-screen instructions to link your current account to Google Play Music.

3. Tap an on-screen account to add it or select **Add account** to use a new account.
4. At the free songs screen, select either **Get free songs** or **Skip**.
 - Get free songs are downloaded via either the Internet or Play Store.
 - Follow the on-screen download and installation instructions.
5. Swipe left or right to browse through your new and available music. Music, albums, and artists are grouped into categories.
6. Tap an on-screen album to open it and begin playback.
7. Return to the Library screen from most other screens in the Music application by tapping the Music application icon  (Music notification icon) at the top-left of the Application bar.

Changing Library View

You can change the way you view the contents of your library.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. While in a selection or screen, tap  (near the top-left of the Application bar) or the tab name to back up to the main Music App menu.
3. Available tabs include: **RECENT, ARTISTS, ALBUMS, SONGS, PLAYLISTS**, or **GENRES**.

Note: The contents of your library display in a scrolling grid or list view, depending on the view.

Searching for Music in Your Library

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Tap  (Search) to search through your available songs.
3. Type the name of an artist, album, song, or playlist. Matching songs are displayed in a list below the search box.
4. Tap a matching song to play it, tap a matching album, artist or playlist to view a list of its' songs.

Changing Music Settings

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Press  and then make a selection.
 - **Shuffle all:** Play all songs in a random order.
 - **Make available offline:** Stores non-local music files to a local folder location.
 - **Offline music only:** Shows only offline local music files.
 - **Settings:** Provides access to the Play Music settings.
 - **Help:** Displays application help information.

Listening to Music

You can listen to music by using your device's built-in speakers, through a wired headset, or through a wireless Bluetooth stereo headset.

Press the volume keys on the side of the device to activate on-screen volume control, then touch and drag on the scale to set volume.

Playing Music

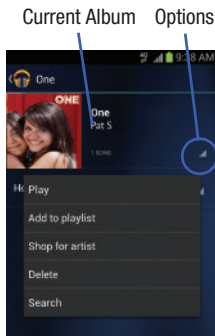
1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).

2. Tap a song in your library to listen to it.

— or —

While viewing a list of songs, tap  (Options) next to a song and tap **Play**.

— or —



While viewing a list of albums, artists, playlists, or genres, tap  (Options) adjacent to the label and tap **Play**.

The **Now playing** screen opens and the song you touched or the first song in the album or playlist starts to play. The tracks in the current list play in order until you reach the end of the list (unless you choose a repeat option). Otherwise, playback stops only if you stop it, even when you switch applications.

Note: If you navigate away from the **Now playing** screen in the Music application, the Now Playing bar appears at the bottom of the screen.

Displaying the Now Playing Screen

If you navigate away from the **Now playing** screen, to return to the **Now playing** screen from other Music screens:

- Tap the name of the current song in the Now Playing bar.
— or —

In a single motion, touch and drag  (**Music notification icon**) down from the Status bar and tap the song title from the Notifications area. You can also pause and resume playback and skip to the next song in the panel. For more information, refer to “Notification Screen” on page 35.

Tab Options

There are various options available from the various tabs:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Play Music**).
2. Select one of the following tabs and tap  to access an available option.
 - **RECENT:** to display the most recently played songs and albums
 - **ARTISTS:** Play, Add to playlist, More by artist, Shop for artist, or Search.

- **ALBUMS:** Play, Add to playlist, More by artist, Shop for artist, or Search.
- **SONGS:** Play, Add to playlist, Shop for artist, Delete, or Search.
- **PLAYLIST:** Play, Rename, or Delete.
- **GENRES:** Play, Add to playlist, More by artist, Shop for artist, or Search.

Options While Playing a Song

When you play a song, the **Now playing** screen displays. There are various options and controls available while a song is playing:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Play Music**).
2. Tap an album or song.
3. From the Now playing screen, press  (**Menu**) to display the following options:
 - **Sound effects:** Applies selected sound effects.
 - **Show/Hide options:** View additional playback features such as shuffle and repeat.
 - **Settings:** Allows you to view information such as Open source licenses and Music version.

4. Tap  → **Add to playlist** to add the song to a playlist.
— or —
Tap  →  → **Add to playlist** to add the song to a playlist.
5. Tap the **ARTIST** name to view songs related to this artist.
6. Tap the **ALBUM** name to view or play other songs on the album.

The **Now playing** screen contains several buttons that you can tap to control the playback of songs, albums, and playlists:



Tap to go back to the previous song. Touch and hold to scan backward through the current song.



Tap to resume playback.



Tap to pause playback.



Tap to advance to the next song. Touch and hold to scan forward through the current song.



When Shuffle mode is enabled via **Show Options**, songs play in random order. When disabled (as shown), songs play in the order they appear in List view. Also visible when  is tapped.



When Shuffle mode is enabled via **Show Options**, songs play in random order. When enabled, songs play in random order. Also visible when  is tapped.



Tap to repeat the current song, repeat all songs, or disable repeat mode. Also visible when  is tapped.

Creating a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Play Music**).
2. Tap an album or song list and play a song.
3. Tap  →  adjacent to the song name and select **Add to playlist**.
4. Tap **New playlist** → **Playlist name** field to enter a name for the playlist.
5. Tap **OK** to save the new playlist.

Adding Songs to Playlists

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Tap an album or song list and play a song.
3. Tap  →  adjacent to the song name and select **Add to playlist**.
4. Select the desired target playlist.

Playing a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Select the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
3. Tap  next to a playlist title and tap **Play**.

Deleting a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).
2. Display the **PLAYLISTS** library view.
3. Tap  next to a playlist title and tap **Delete**.

Music Player

The Music Player is an application that can play music files. The music player supports files with extensions AAC, AAC+, eAAC+, MP3, WMA, 3GP, MP4, and M4A. Launching the Music Player allows you to navigate through your music library, play songs, and create playlists (music files bigger than 300 KB are displayed).

Playing Music

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music player).
2. Tap a library category tab to select the music category: **All**, **Playlists**, **Albums**, **Artists**, **Music square**, or **Folders**.
3. Scroll through the list and tap an entry to begin playback.

Note: The 5.1 channel sound effect works when earphones or sound is connected through the headset jack only.

4. Use any of the following Music Player controls:



Pause the song.



Start the song after pausing.



Press and hold to rewind the song. Tap to go to previous song.



Press and hold to fast-forward the song. Tap to go to next song.



Volume control.



Plays the entire song list once.



Replays the current list when the list ends.



Repeats the currently playing song.



shuffles the current list of songs randomly.



songs play in order and are not shuffled.



provides access to the Music square.



lists the current playlist songs



displays the current song in the player window



provides access to the Equalizer

Making a Song a Phone Ringtone

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music player).
2. Tap the **All** tab.
3. Touch and hold a song from the list to reveal the on-screen context menu.
4. Tap **Set as** → **Phone ringtone**.

Music Player Options

The Music Player Settings menu allows you to set preferences for the music player such as whether you want the music to play in the background, sound effects, and how the music menu displays.

- With the Music player application displayed and playing a song, press  and select one of the following options:
 - **Add to quick list:** adds the current music file to the Quick list.
 - **Via Bluetooth:** scans for devices and pairs with a Bluetooth headset.
 - **Share music via:** allows you to share your music by using Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Evernote - Create Note, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.

- **Add to playlist:** allows you to add the current music file to a selected playlist.
- **Details:** allows you to view media info such as Artist, Title, Album, Track length, Genre, Track number, Format, Size, and Location.
- **Set as:** allows you to set the current song as a Phone ringtone, Caller ringtone, or Alarm tone.
- **Scan for nearby devices:** begins searching for compatible DLNA devices connected to the same Wi-Fi.
- **Settings:** allows you to change your music player settings.
- **End:** closes the application.

Music Player Settings

The Music Player Settings menu allows you to set preferences for the music player such as whether you want the music to play in the background, sound effects, and how the music menu displays.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music player).
2. Press  → Settings.
3. Select one of the following settings:

- **SoundAlive:** set a type of equalization such as Normal, Pop, Rock, Jazz, Dance, Classic, etc.
- **Play speed:** set the play speed anywhere between 0.5X and 2.0X using the slider.
- **Music menu:** this menu allows you to select which categories you want to display. Choices are: Albums, Artists, Genres, Music square, Folders, Composers, Years, Most played, Recently played, or Recently added. Tap each item that you want to display in the Music menu.
- **Lyrics:** when activated, the lyrics of the song are displayed if available.
- **Music auto off:** when activated, music will automatically turn off after a set interval.

Using Playlists

Playlists are used to assign music files into groups for playback. These Playlists can be created using the Music player on this device, or using a third-party application (such as Windows Media Player) and downloading those files to an SD card inserted into the device.

Creating a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music player).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Press  and then tap **Create playlist**.
4. Backspace over the default playlist title and type a new name for this playlist, then tap **OK**.

Adding Music to a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music player).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Tap the playlist name in which to add music.

4. Press  and then tap **Add**.
– or –

Tap  (**Add music**). This option is available within user-created playlists.

Note: If a playlist is empty, add a song by touching a holding a song name from the main screen to open the context menu. Select **Add to playlist** and choose the playlist.

5. Tap a music file, or tap **Select all** to add all the music tracks to this playlist then tap **Done**.

Removing Music from a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music player).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Tap the playlist name in which to delete music.
4. Touch and hold a song to reveal the on-screen context menu.
5. Tap **Remove**.

Editing a Playlist

Besides adding and removing music files in a playlist, you can also share, delete, or rename the playlist.

Note: Only those playlist you have created can be edited. Default playlists can not be renamed.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music player).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Touch and hold a playlist entry to reveal the on-screen context menu.
4. Tap **Edit title**.
5. Enter a new name for this playlist and tap **OK**.

Transferring Music Files

Music files can be downloaded to the phone using one of two methods:

1. Downloaded to the device from the Play Store.
Music files are directly stored on your phone.
2. Downloaded to the phone via a direct USB connection.
Music files are stored into a Music folder on the SD card.

For more information, refer to “Communicating with the SD card” on page 63.

Removing Music Files

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music player).
2. Tap the **All** tab.
3. Touch and hold a song entry to reveal the on-screen context menu.
4. Tap **Delete** → **OK**. The music file(s) is deleted.

T-Mobile TV

T-Mobile TV is an application that allows you to get live TV and Video on Demand.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (T-Mobile TV). The T-Mobile Terms and Conditions page displays.

Note: A data plan is required to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

3. Tap **Accept** if you accept the Terms and Conditions.
– or –
Tap **Exit** to close the application.

Note: T-Mobile TV must be initialized over a cellular network before it can be used. During this initial registration process, any Wi-Fi connections must be disabled.

3. Tap **Disable Wi-Fi** if you currently have an active Wi-Fi connection.
4. Tap **Start Trial** to begin a free 30-day trial of the service.
– or –
Tap **Continue** to keep viewing the free content or **Purchase Options** to buy the paid features.
5. Tap any of the following categories to begin viewing: **Live TV, On Demand, My Media, More Info, Browse, or Live Channels.**

YouTube

YouTube is a video sharing website on which users can upload and share videos, and view them in MPEG-4 format.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**YouTube**).
2. When the screen loads you can begin searching and viewing posted videos.
3. Press  → **Settings** → **General** → **High quality on mobile** if you prefer high quality output.

Section 9: Applications and Development

This section contains a description of each application that is available in the Applications Menu, its function, and how to navigate through that particular application. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided.

Tip: To open applications quickly, add the icons of frequently-used applications to one of the Home screens. For more information, refer to “*Customizing the Screens*” on page 55.

You can also add an application icon as a Primary Shortcut that will display on all Home screens. If you add an application as a primary shortcut, the application icon will not be displayed in the Applications menu. For more information, refer to “*Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts*” on page 58.

Applications

The Applications list provides quick access to all the available applications on the phone.

Access T-Mobile

This application provides you online access to account information such as your current activity, billing information, service plans, downloads, and other information.

Note: Wi-Fi connection must be disabled prior to use, this application requires use of a T-Mobile network connection.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Access T-Mobile).
2. Scroll to the bottom of the application screen and select one of the available options:
 - **My Account** provides access to account-specific features such as: Bill Cycle start date, Usage, and Detailed usage information.
 - **Billing** provides details about your current billing summary.

- **Plans & Services** provides about both your current plan, other available plans and other related services.
- **Other T-Mobile Links** provides links to other T-Mobile related information.
- **Settings & Support** provides access to Settings & Content options (ex: My Downloads, MobileLife, More for Me Settings) and Terms & Condition information.

Amazon

This mobile application provides a user with access to the online Amazon website.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Applications**) →  (**Amazon**).
2. Log in to the site and follow the on-screen instructions.

Calculator

Using this feature allows you to use your device as a calculator. The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions; addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. You can also use this as a scientific calculator.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Calculator**).
2. Enter the first number using the numeric keys.
3. Enter the operation for your calculation by tapping the **Plus, Minus, Multiplication, or Division** key.
4. Enter the next number.
5. To view the result, tap the **= (equals)** key.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 4 as many times as required.

Note: Place the screen in Landscape mode to reveal additional scientific functions.

Calendar

With this feature, you can consult the calendar by day, week, or month, create events, and set an alarm to act as a reminder. Google Calendar is built into the phone and synchronizes both new and existing entries between your device and your online Google account.

Important! You should previously add an account (Facebook, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, or Google) prior to using the Calendar.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Applications) →  (Calendar).

Calendar Overview

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Calendar). Tap  (Show More) to display these tabs:
 - **Year:** displays the Year view.
 - **Month:** displays the Month view.
 - **Week:** displays the Week view.
 - **Day:** displays the Day view.
 - **List:** displays your upcoming events in a listed view.
 - **Task:** allows you to search for tasks.
2. Tap  (Create event) to create a new Calendar event.
– or –
Tap **Today** to display the current date indicated by a blue box, then press  and select one of the following options:
 - **Go to:** displays a specific date.
 - **Delete:** allows you to delete All events, All events before today, or an individual event.
 - **Search:** allows you to search within your current events.

- **Sync:** synchronizes your current calendar events with your available accounts (such as Gmail, Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, etc..).
- **Settings:** displays a list of configurable settings.

Creating a Calendar Event

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Calendar).
2. Within the Year, Month, Week, and Day tabs, tap  (Create event).

Calendar Settings

Using the Calendar settings you can select the day with which you want the calendar to begin. You also select how you want to view the calendar, by Month, Week, or Day or determine how to manage events, notifications, sounds, and defaults reminders.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) → .
2. Press  → **Settings**.
3. Tap **Week view** and select a type: **Timeline** or **Analog**.
4. Tap **First day of week** and select either **Local default**, **Saturday**, **Sunday** or **Monday**.
5. Tap **Hide declined events** to activate this option. A check mark indicates selection.
6. Tap **Lock time zone** (to lock event time based on your current user-selected time zone). Select a time zone from within the **Select time zone** field.
7. Tap **Show week number** to display the week numbers along the side of the week entries.
8. Tap **Calendars** and select the type of general synchronization settings you want. A check mark indicates selection.
9. Tap **Set alerts & notifications** to adjust the event notification method. Choose from: **Alert**, **Status bar notification**, and **Off**.
10. Tap **Select ringtone** to assign a ringtone to a calendar event notification.
11. Tap **Vibration** to activate a vibration action to a calendar event notification.
12. Tap **Default reminder time** to assign a default time frame for event reminders.
13. Tap **Notifications while screen is off** to display notifications on the full screen while it is turned off.

14. Tap **Sync events/tasks** to select those calendar events and task to sync based on current accounts.
15. Tap **Swipe with two fingers** to change the way events are displayed when swiped.

Camera

Use your 5.0 megapixel camera feature to produce photos in a JPEG format. The Camcorder shoots High Definition video in an MP4 format.

Note: A microSD card is no longer necessary before you take pictures or shoot video.
It is recommended that you confirm your default storage location for images and videos.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Camera).

For more information, refer to “Using the Camera” on page 145.

Clock

Here you can set an Alarm, configure and view the World clock, use a Stopwatch, set a Timer, or use a Desk Clock. The applications display in a tabular format and quickly accessed with the touch of a finger.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock).

Setting an Alarm

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock).
2. Tap  (Create alarm).
3. Use the plus or minus symbols to enter the hour, and minutes, then tap **AM** or **PM** (toggles depending on which was last selected).
4. Tap the **Alarm repeat** field and touch the number of times you want this alarm to repeat. Selections are: day blocks or **Repeat weekly**. Selected day blocks turn blue when active.
5. Tap the **Alarm type** field and select one of the following: **Melody**, **Vibration**, **Vibration and melody**, or **Briefing**.

6. Slide the slider bar left or right in the **Alarm volume** field to decrease or increase the alarm volume. A sample of the volume level plays.
7. Tap the **Alarm tone** field and select one of the following: **Sounds**, or **Go to My files**. Locate a sound to use as an alarm ringtone then tap **OK** to activate the ringtone.
8. Tap the radio button to activate a tone for the **Snooze**. Tap the field to assign a duration time (3 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, or 30 minutes) and **Snooze repeat** (1 time, 2 times, 3 times, 5 times, and 10 times).
 - **Duration** indicates the length of time the alarm will remain silent between alarm notifications (snooze time).
 - **Snooze repeat** indicates the numbers of snooze sessions that are assigned to this alarm. How many times will the snooze silence the alarm.

9. Move the **Smart alarm** slider to the On position  to activate this feature which slowly increases screen brightness and the volume of nature tones to simulate dawn breaking. Tap the **Duration** field to assign a duration time (3 min, 5 min, 10 min, 15 min, or 30 min) and **Tone** (Fairy fountain, Birdsong by the lake, Sparkling mist, The secret forest, Serenity, or Gentle spring rain).
 - **Duration** category describes the length of time the alarm will remain silent between alarm notifications (snooze time).
 - **Tone** category provides one of several nature sounds that are used as the alarm tone.
10. Tap the **Name** field and enter a name for this Alarm.
11. Tap **Save** to store the new alarm event.

To turning Off an Alarm:

- To stop an alarm when it sounds, touch and slide  in any direction.

To use the Snooze feature:

- To activate the Snooze feature after an alarm sounds, touch and slide  in any direction. Snooze must first be set in the alarm settings.

World Clock

This feature allows you to find out what time it is another part of world.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock).
2. Tap the **World clock** tab.
3. Tap **Add city** then scroll and select the desired city, or tap in the search field to locate a city.

To assign DST settings:

1. Locate a desired city from the World Clock list.
2. Touch and hold a city and select **DST settings**.
3. Select a DST setting (Automatic, Off, or 1 hour). If Daylight Savings Time is selected, the sun symbol on the World Clock listing will appear orange.

Stopwatch

This feature allows you to capture elapsed time while letting the stopwatch keep running.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock) → **Stopwatch** tab.
2. Tap **Start** to start the stopwatch counter.
3. Tap **Lap** to begin the lap time counter.
4. Tap **Stop** to stop the counter.
5. Tap **Restart** to restart the lap counter. You can have multiple lap times.
6. Tap **Reset** to reset the counter.

Setting a Timer

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock) → **Timer** tab.
2. Tap the **Hours**, **Minutes**, or **Seconds** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter the hour, minute, or seconds. The timer plays an alarm at the end of the countdown.
3. Tap **Start** to start the timer.
4. Tap **Stop** to stop the timer or **Reset** to reset the timer and start over.

5. Tap **Restart** to resume the timer counter.

Configuring a Desk Clock

This feature lets you activate an on-screen clock that can be viewed when the device is docked.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Clock) → **Desk clock** tab.

Contacts

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts List is your phone's built-in memory.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Contacts).

For more information, refer to “*Contacts List*” on page 99.

Downloads

Provides quick access to tabs containing a list of your current downloaded files (Internet and Other).

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Downloads).
2. Tap an available file category tab (**Internet downloads** or **Other downloads**) and select the desired file.

Dropbox

Works to provide access to your desktop files directly from your device. This applications allows you to bring your files with you when you're on the go, edit files in your Dropbox from your device, upload photos and videos to Dropbox, and share your selected files freely with family and friends.

The in-device application works in conjunction with a partner program placed on a target computer using an active Internet connection.

Dropbox creates a folder that automatically synchronizes its contents across all of your connected devices on your account. Update a file to your dropbox on your computer, and its automatically updated to the same folder on your other devices.

Download the Desktop application

1. Use your computer's browser to navigate to:
<http://www.dropbox.com/>.
2. Follow the on-screen setup and installation instructions on your target computer containing the desired files.

Important! The computer application must be installed on the computer containing the desired files. This computer must have an active Internet connection.

Note: It might be necessary to configure your router's firewall settings to allow this application to gain access to the Internet.

Accessing Dropbox on your Device

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Dropbox**) → **Start**.
2. Tap **I'm already a Dropbox user**, enter your current account credentials, and tap **Log in**.
— or —
Tap **I'm new to Dropbox** and follow the on-screen instructions to register for a new account.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.
4. Initially, you will need to configure your Camera upload parameters. Choose from Wi-Fi only or Wi-Fi or data plan.

Caution! Enabling this feature can incur data charges (depending on your plan) if the Wi-Fi or data plan is selected.

5. Tap  (**Access Dropbox**) at the top of the application window to access the files and folders you are currently sharing from your computer.
6. Tap an item to open it.
7. Touch and hold an on-screen item to choose from additional options:
 - **Share** via applications such as: Copy link, Bluetooth, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
 - **Favorite** to tag an image as a favorite.
 - **Delete** to erase the current file.
 - **Rename** to rename the current file.
 - **Export** to transfer the current file to another location via: Save to SD card, Bluetooth, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Group Cast, Messaging, Picasa, Wi-Fi Direct, or Gallery.
8. Tap  (**Up a Directory Level**) at the top of the application window to navigate up a single level with every tap.

9. Tap  (Tag as Favorite) at the top of the application window to access the

Manually uploading a Picture to Dropbox

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Camera).
2. After the image is taken, tap the Image Viewer box at the bottom right. This previews the current image.
3. Tap  (Share via) to reveal the image options at the top of the screen.
4. Tap  (Dropbox) select a folder location and tap Upload.

Note: If your share folder is located on your computer, you will momentarily receive an on-screen popup notifying you that a new image was uploaded to your shared Dropbox folder.

Email

Email enables you to review and create email using most email services. The device alerts you when you receive an email message.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Email).

For more information, refer to “Using Email” on page 129.

Evernote

This application allows you to easily remind yourself of things across all of your current devices. Evernote lets you create to-do lists, take pictures, record voice memos, and write reminders to yourself. These notes are both accessible and searchable from any location that is accessible by your device.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Evernote).
2. Tap either Create Account or Sign In and follow the on-screen instructions.

Facebook

This built-in application allows you to go directly to your Facebook™ account rather than accessing it from the Browser.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Facebook).
2. If you already have a Facebook account, tap on the **Email** and **Password** fields and enter your information using the on-screen keyboard, then tap **Log In**.
— or —
If you don't have a Facebook account, tap **Sign Up for Facebook** and follow the on-screen instructions.

Gallery

The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or caller image, and share as a picture message.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gallery).

For more information, refer to “*The Gallery*” on page 157.

Game Base

The T-Mobile Game Base provides access to a game rental and purchase services for compatible T-Mobile Android devices.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Game Base).
2. Tap an available category and follow the on-screen instructions.

Gmail

Google Mail (Gmail) is a web-based email service. Gmail is configured when you first set up your phone. Depending on your synchronization settings, Gmail can automatically synchronize with your Gmail account on the web.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Gmail).

For more information, refer to “*Using Google Mail*” on page 139.

Google +

Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier.

1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to *“Creating a New Google Account”* on page 19.
2. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Google+).

For more information, refer to *“Google +”* on page 142.

Internet

Open the browser to start surfing the web. The browser is fully optimized and comes with advanced functionality to enhance the Internet browsing feature on your device.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Internet).

For more information, refer to *“Internet”* on page 214.

Latitude

Google Latitude allows you and your friends share locations and status messages with each other. It also lets you send instant messages and emails, make phone calls, and get directions to your friends' locations.

Important! You must sign in to your Google account, enable Wi-Fi, and enable the Location feature before you can use this application. For more information, refer to *“Wi-Fi settings”* on page 233.

Note: Although you do not have to enable location services in order to use Latitude, it is recommended for best accuracy.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Latitude) →  →  (Join Latitude) to display your Latitude friends.

Important! For best results, it is recommended that you enable all of your location services. For more information, refer to *“Location Services”* on page 264.

2. Tap **Wi-Fi Disabled - Click to enable** connection to navigate to the Wi-Fi Settings menu where you can turn on Wi-Fi if it is not already enabled.
For more information, refer to “*Wi-Fi*” on page 228.
3. If prompted with the **Improve My Location** screen, tap **Settings** to configure the necessary settings or **Skip** to continue on without making a change.
4. Tap **MAP VIEW** to return to the main application.

Sharing your Location with Friends

1. From the map view, if not already displaying the Latitude icon at the top right, tap the bottom-right arrow from  →  (**Join Latitude**) to display your Latitude friends. At first, only your name is displayed.
2. From the bottom of the Latitude map screen, tap **FRIENDS LIST** →  (**Add friends**).
– or –
Tap  (**Add friends**).
3. Tap **Select from Contacts** or **Add via email address**.
4. Tap a contact or enter an email address, then tap **Add friends**.

5. Tap **Yes** at the **Send sharing requests** prompt.
Your friend will receive an email or text message with your location marked on a map. They will also receive instructions on how to view your location from the web or use Latitude on their phone or tablet provided it is available. Once they acknowledge your request, their location will display on your device. They can share their location from their computer, phone, or tablet. For more information, go to <http://www.google.com/latitude>.
6. To view the map, tap **MAP VIEW**.

Latitude Options

- From the Latitude map screen ( is shown in the upper-left) display, select either:
 - **FRIENDS LIST:** allows you to access and edit your current Friends list.
 - or –
- From the Latitude map, press  and select one of the following:
- **Clear Map:** allows you to remove all markings and layers from the map.

- **Search:** allows you to search for a place of interest.
- **Directions:** displays navigation directions to a location from a starting point.
- **Layers:** allows you to switch map views:
 - **Traffic:** (available only in selected areas) Real-time traffic conditions are displayed over roads as color-coded lines. Each color represents how fast the traffic is moving.
 - **Satellite:** Maps uses the same satellite data as Google Earth. Satellite images are not real-time. Google Earth acquires the best imagery available, most of which is approximately one to three years old.
 - **Terrain:** combines a topographical view of the area's terrain with the current map location.
 - **Transit Lines:** displays the overlapping transit lines on your map.
 - **Latitude:** allows you to see your friend's locations and share your location with them.
 - **My Maps:** displays a list of your preferred maps.
 - **Bicycling:** displays the overlapping cycling trails on your map.
 - **Wikipedia:** displays any Wikipedia markers and info on your map.
- **Settings:** allows you to select the following additional options:
 - **Display:** allows you to enable/disable the Zoom Buttons and Scale Bar.
 - **Cache:** allows you to set options to pre-fetch map tiles when not using Wi-Fi and to clear the cache that holds the map tiles.
 - **Location settings:** lets you access and configure the location settings.
 - **Labs:** this is a testing ground for experimental features that aren't ready for primetime. They may change, break or disappear at any time. Click on a Lab to enable or disable it.
 - **What's New:** provides access to the Play Store from where you can update the application manually.
 - **About:** displays general information about Google maps such as Version, Platform, Locale, Total data sent, Total data received, Free memory, etc.
 - **Feedback:** allows you to provide application feedback.
 - **Terms, Privacy & Notices:** displays the Terms and Conditions, Privacy Policy, or Legal Notices information. Select the desired information from the pop-up menu.
- **Help:** provides help information.

Local

Local (formerly known as Google Places) displays company logos on a layer of Google Maps. When viewing an area you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about the business, see coupons, public responses, and more.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Local**).
2. Tap  (**Search**) and then use the **Find places** field to manually enter a desired place or choose from among the various categories. Matches are filtered by those closest to your current location.
3. Locate and tap one of the listed places (Restaurants, Cafes, Bars, Attractions, [user added searches], RECOMMENDATIONS, or IN THIS AREA a list of places within this category displays).
4. Tap the Maps icon to launch the related maps feature.
5. Press  and then tap **Add a search**. The functions adds additional search shortcuts to the places screen.

Lookout Security

Lookout Security™ provides mobile device-specific security features that are coupled with a minimal performance hit. Lookout Mobile Security provides key security options that are unique to the mobile market. Along with the antivirus and anti-malware tech, there's a lost and stolen phone locator service, an application privacy adviser, and a backup service.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Lookout Security**).
2. Read the on-screen descriptions and tap **Get started** to begin your configuration.
3. Read the on-screen information about Security and if desired, tap the **Enable Security** field to activate the feature.
4. Tap **Next**.
5. Read the on-screen information about Backup and if desired, tap the **Enable Backup** field to activate the feature.
6. Tap **Next**.

7. Read the on-screen information about the feature that can help locate your missing phone and if desired, tap **New user** (to setup a new account) or **Existing user** (to log into your account field to activate the feature).
8. Tap **Start Lookout**.
 - From the main application, the main features are presented as buttons. Tap one to reveal a button that will run the feature.

Maps

Google Maps allow you to track your current location, view real-time traffic issues, and view detailed destination directions. There is also a search tool included to help you locate places of interest or a specific address. You can view locations on a vector or aerial map, or you can view locations at the street level.

Important! Before using Google Maps you must have an active data (3G/4G) or Wi-Fi connection. The Maps application does not cover every country or city.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Maps).

Important! For best results, it is recommended that you enable all of your location services. For more information, refer to “*Location Services*” on page 264.

Enabling a Location source

Before you use Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable a location source. To enable the location source you must enable the wireless network, or enable the GPS satellites.

Important! The more location determining functions are enabled, the more accurate the determination will be of your position.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Location services**.
2. Tap **Use wireless networks** allows apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to provide a better approximation of your current location.
3. Tap **Use GPS satellites** to enable the GPS satellite.
4. Tap **Use sensor aiding** to enhance your positioning readings and save power by using sensors.

Tip: When using Google Maps you can turn on **Location and Google search**. Enabling this feature allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level. However, this also requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

Opening Maps

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Maps).
 2. Tap the upper-right My location button to find your location on the map with a blinking blue dot.
 3. Locate the bottom row of the buttons to access additional options:
 - **Search:** allows you to search for a place of interest.
 - **Directions:** displays navigation directions to a location from a starting point.
- **Local:** provides access to the places menu where you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about a business, see coupons, public responses, and more (Local). Locate and tap one of the listed places (Restaurants, Cafes, Bars, Attractions, or select from available categories such as Entertainment, ATMs, Gas stations, Hotels, Post office, or Taxi.)
 - **Layers:** allows you to switch map views:
 - **Traffic:** (available only in selected areas) Real-time traffic conditions are displayed over roads as color-coded lines. Each color represents how fast the traffic is moving.
 - **Satellite:** Maps uses the same satellite data as Google Earth. Satellite images are not real-time. Google Earth acquires the best imagery available, most of which is approximately one to three years old.
 - **Terrain:** combines a topographical view of the area's terrain with the current map location.
 - **Transit Lines:** displays the overlapping transit lines on your map.
 - **Latitude:** allows you to see your friend's locations and share your location with them.

- **My Maps:** displays a list of your preferred maps.
- **Bicycling:** displays the overlapping cycling trails on your map.
- **Wikipedia:** displays any Wikipedia markers and info on your map.

4. Press and select one of the following options:

- **Clear Map:** allows you to remove all markings and layers from the map.
- **Settings:** allows you to select the following additional options:
 - **Display:** allows you to enable/disable the Zoom Buttons and Scale Bar.
 - **Cache:** allows you to set options to pre-fetch map tiles when not using Wi-Fi and to clear the cache that holds the map tiles.
 - **Sign in:** allows you to sign into your Google account, if you have not already done so.
 - **Labs:** this is a testing ground for experimental features that aren't ready for primetime. They may change, break or disappear at any time. Click on a Lab to enable or disable it.
 - **What's New:** provides access to the Play Store from where you can update the application manually.

- **About:** displays general information about Google maps such as Version, Platform, Locale, Total data sent, Total data received, Free memory, etc.
- **Feedback:** allows you to provide application feedback.
- **Terms, Privacy & Notices:** displays the Terms and Conditions, Privacy Policy, or Legal Notices information. Select the desired information from the pop-up menu.
- **Help:** provides help information.

Media Hub

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Media Hub).

For more information, refer to “Media Hub” on page 161.

Memo

This feature allows you to create a memo.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Memo).
2. Tap **Create memo** ().

Note: If this is your first memo, you are automatically taken to the new memo screen.

3. Compose the memo and tap **Save**.

For more information, refer to “*Text Input Methods*” on page 87.

Memo options

1. While viewing the list of Memos, press  and select one of the following options:
 - **Search:** allows you to search within the current set of memos.
 - **Delete:** allows you to delete one or more memos.
 - **Send:** allows you to send one or several of your memos at one time. Select a memo and tap send to deliver it via: Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Evernote - Create Note, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
 - **Sort by:** allows you to sort by Date or Color.
 - **Sync memo:** allows you to sync your memos Google Docs or send individual memos.
 - **PIN lock:** allows you to set a PIN lock so that a PIN must be entered before reading a memo.
2. Touch and hold the memo then select either **Send** or **Share** and choose the method to send this memo: **Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Evernote - Create Note, Messaging** or **Wi-Fi Direct**.
3. From the memo list, touch the upper-left edit button and select a color for the memo's background, then tap **Save**.

Messaging

This application allows you to use the Short Message Service (SMS) to send and receive short text messages to and from other mobile phones. You can also use the Multi Media Service (MMS) to create multimedia messages to send and receive from other mobile phones.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Messaging).

For more information, refer to “Messages” on page 119.

Messenger

Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your phone.

1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to “Creating a New Google Account” on page 19.
2. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Messenger).

– or –

From the Google+ application, select **Messenger**.

For more information, refer to “Messenger” on page 142.

Mobile HotSpot

Provides access to the Tethering and portable HotSpot menu where you can use either the USB tethering or portable HotSpot functionality.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Mobile HotSpot).
2. Activate the desired connection method.

For more information see either “USB Tethering” on page 230 or “Mobile HotSpot” on page 231.

MobileLife Organizer

Organizes your family's calendar, family shopping list, To-Do list, and Journal entries in one place. Key features include:

- Easily access Family Members calendar on-the-go.
- Shopping List: Create a shared grocery list to prevent over purchasing or missed items.
- Calendar: Easily see your entire family's calendar on one screen. Calendar entries are available on the device and a computer.
- To Do: Create a shared To Do list for the entire family to work on together.
- Journal: Track fun things your family does on the go and include pictures to remember the moment.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (MobileLife Organizer).

Logging in to MobileLife

To use MobileLife Organizer with an existing account:

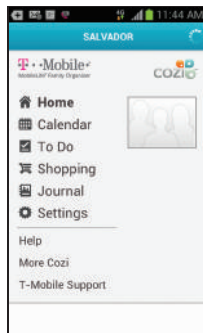
1. From the main application screen, enter your Email address and Shared family password into the appropriate fields.
2. Tap **Sign in**.

To create a new MobileLife Organizer account:

1. From the main application screen, tap **Create an account**.
2. Enter the necessary information, such as First name, Email address, Household name, and a Shared password.
3. Read the terms of use and place a check mark along side the field to confirm your acceptance of the terms.
4. Tap **Done**.

Create a Calendar appointment

1. From the MobileLife main screen, locate the Application menu and tap **Calendar**.
2. Tap  (Menu) from the bottom of the screen.
3. Select **New Appointment**.



4. Enter all Appointment Details and select household members to be included in the appointment.
 - These members can be added by entering their name, Email address, phone number, and assigning a color.
5. Tap **Save**.

More for Me

Provides customized offers, discounts and deals right to your device by providing some brief customer and location information. The application uses your current location to bring you the best deals in your area.

Initial Setup

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (More for Me).
2. Read the on-screen information and configure the necessary options such as: Gender, Age, and agreements.
3. Tap **Continue** to complete the setup process.

Using the More for Me Application

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (More for Me).
2. Access an available tab for more options:
 - **Just for Me:** displays a listing of current offers available within your current area.
 - **All Deals:** Provides you with common categories to choose from, such as: Food & Drinks, Health & Beauty, Retail & Service, Activities, Events, Other, and All nearby.
 - **My Deals:** displays a list of previously redeemed offers.
 - **Settings:** Provides access to configuration settings such as: Get Better Deals, Connect with Facebook, and Terms & Conditions.

Music player

This application allows you to play music files that you have stored on your microSD card. You can also create playlists.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Music player).

For more information, refer to “Music Player” on page 170.

My files

This application allows you to manage your sounds, images, videos, bluetooth files, Android files, and other memory card data in one convenient location. This application allows you to launch a file if the associated application is already on your phone (ex: MP4).

- From the Home screen, tap  (**Applications**) →  (**My files**).

Note: Navigation in this viewer works on a hierarchy structure with folders, subfolders, etc.

Note: The application lets you view supported image files and text files on both your internal storage and microSD card.

Opening and Navigating within Files

DCIM is the default location for pictures or video taken by the device. These files are actually stored in the DCIM folder location.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Applications**) →  (**My files**).
2. Tap a folder and scroll down or up until you locate your selected file.
 - **Home tab**  allows you to back up to the root directory.
 - **Up tab**  allows you to back up into a higher directory.
 - Press  and then tap **View by** to change the way the files are displayed on-screen. Choose from: **List**, **List and details**, or **Thumbnail**.
 - Within a target folder, press  for these additional options: **Create folder**, **Delete**, **Search**, **View by**, **Sort by**, **Share via**, **Move**, **Copy**, **Rename**, and **Settings**.
3. Once you have located your file, tap the file name to launch the associated application.

Navigation

Google Maps Navigation (Beta) is an internet-connected turn-by-turn, GPS navigation system with voice guidance.

Caution! Traffic data is not real-time and directions may be wrong, dangerous, prohibited, or involve ferries.

Important! To receive better GPS signals, avoid using your device in the following conditions:

- inside a building or between buildings
 - in a tunnel or underground passage
 - in poor weather
 - around high-voltage or electromagnetic fields
 - in a vehicle with tinted windows
-

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Navigation).
2. Read the on-screen disclaimer regarding the current release status of the Navigation app and tap **Accept**.

Enabling GPS Location

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Location services**.
 2. Tap **Use wireless networks** allows apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to provide a better approximation of your current location.
 3. Tap **Use GPS satellites** to enable the GPS satellite.
 4. Tap **Use sensor aiding** to enhance your positioning readings and save power by using sensors.
-

Tip: When using Google Maps you can turn on **Location and Google search**. Enabling this feature allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level. However, this also requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

Navigation options

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Navigation). The navigation application can be configured from the main screen.
2. If prompted, read the on-screen disclaimer and tap **Accept**.
3. Choose from the following on-screen options:
 - **Driving/Walking**  : tap to configure the method of travel. Selection of Walking would negate the need to track traffic jams and obstructions.
 - Driving mode enables the **Settings** feature: allows you to configure your Route options such as: **Avoid highways** or **Avoid tolls**.
 - **Speak Destination**: allows you to use the voice recognition feature to search for matching locations in your area.
 - **Type Destination**: allows you to manually enter a destination address (via the on-screen keypad).
 - **Go Home**: allows you to return to a designated “Home” location.
 - When prompted initially to setup a home address, enter the location into the **Enter an address** field and tap Save.

- **Maps**: enables the on-screen real-time map functionality.

Navigation Map options

Once on the map screen, you can access the following features:

- **Destination**: returns you to the previous Navigation options screen.
- **Search by voice**: Speak your destination instead of typing.
- **Layers**: allows you to switch map views:
 - **Traffic view**: (available only in selected areas) Real-time traffic conditions are displayed over roads as color-coded lines. Each color represents how fast the traffic is moving.
 - **Satellite**: Maps uses the same satellite data as Google Earth. Satellite images are not real-time. Google Earth acquires the best imagery available, most of which is approximately one to three years old.
 - **Parking**: displays parking information relative to your current location.
 - **Gas stations**: displays gas station location relative to your current location.
 - **ATMs & banks**: displays ATM and Bank locations relative to your current location.

- **Restaurants:** displays restaurant and eatery locations relative to your current location.

While on the map screen, press  to access additional options:

- **Set destination:** returns you to the navigation options screen where you can access a destination by either Speaking, Typing, or selecting from a Contacts entry or Starred Place.
- **Search:** manually search for a destination address, place, name of business, or even a type of business.
- **Layers:** allows you to switch map views. See previous description.
- **Settings:** provides access to both Power settings (Screen dimming) and Information (Terms, privacy & notices).
- **Exit navigation:** terminates the application.
- **Help:** provides on-screen help.

Phone

This application provides the ability to make or answering calls, access the Contacts list, which is used to store contact information.

- From the Home screen, tap  (**Phone**).

For more information, refer to “*Call Functions and Contacts List*” on page 66.

Play Books

Formerly known as Google Books, this application allows you to read over 3 million ebooks on the go.

Build your ebooks library in the cloud with Play Books: jump right into a bestseller or select from nearly 3 million free ebooks. Personalize the reader to your liking, pick up reading where you left off on your phone or computer, and settle down with a great book on your Android phone!

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Play Books**).
2. If prompted, tap **Turn sync on**. This synchronizes your books you have previously selected between your Books account and your device.

3. Tap  to begin searching for both free and paid ebooks.
4. Follow the on-screen prompts to download the ebook to your device.

Play Movies

This application allows you to connect to the Play Store, download a movie and then watch it instantly.

Learn more about Google Play Movies at:

<http://play.google.com/about/movies>.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Movies). A list of videos sorted on the SD card displays in the Video list.

For more information, refer to “*Play Movies*” on page 164.

Play Music

Also known as Google Music, allows you to browse, shop, and playback songs purchased from the Play Store. The music you choose is automatically stored in your Google Music library and instantly ready to play or download.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Music).

For more information, refer to “*Play Music*” on page 165.

Play Store

Formerly known as the “Android Market”, this application provides access to downloadable applications and games to install on your phone. The Play Store also allows you to provide feedback and comments about an application, or flag an application that might be incompatible with your phone.

Before using the Play Store, you must have a Google Account.

Accessing the Play Store

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Store).
2. If not already logged in with your Google account, tap **Next**.
3. Tap **Existing** and enter your Google account information.
4. Tap **Accept** to agree to the Play Store terms of service.

For more information, refer to “*Downloading a New Google Application*” on page 203.

Downloading a New Google Application

To download a new application, you will need to use your Google account to sign in to the Play Store. The home page provides several ways to find applications. The home page features applications and includes a list of item applications by category, a list of games, a link to search, and a link to My apps.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Play Store).
2. Browse through the categories, find an application you're interested in, and tap the name.
3. Read the application descriptions.

Important! If the selected application requires access to data or control of a function on your device, the Play Store displays the information the application will access.

Tap **OK** if you agree to the conditions of the application. Once you tap **OK** on this screen you are responsible for using this application on the device and the amount of data it uses. Use this feature with caution.

4. Tap **Install** → **Accept & download**.

Note: Use caution with applications which request access to any personal data, functions, or significant amounts of data usage times.

5. If prompted, follow the on-screen instructions to pay for the application.
6. Check the progress of the current download by opening the Notifications panel. The content download icon  appears in the notification area of the status bar.

7. On the main Play Store screen, press  and then tap **My Apps**, tap an installed application in the list, and then tap **Open**.

Tip: The newly downloaded applications display in the applications list and are shown in alphabetical order if the View Type is set to Alphabetical grid or Alphabetical list, or at the end of the list if View type is set to Customizable grid.

Note: A data plan is required to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

Launching an Installed Google Application

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**).
2. Tap the newly installed application. This application is typically located on the last Applications page.

Unknown sources

This feature can be used for Android application development. The feature allows developers to install non-Play Store applications.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security** → **Unknown sources**.

Unknown sources displays a check mark to indicate it is active.

Note: If Unknown sources is disabled, those applications without a certificate will not be allowed to download to your device.

Manage applications

This feature allows you to manage and remove installed applications. You can also view the amount of memory or resources used as well as the remaining memory and resources for each of the applications on your device and clear the data, cache, or defaults.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Application manager**.

Clearing application cache and data

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Application manager**.
2. Tap an application in which to clear the cache or data.
3. Tap **Force stop**, **Uninstall**, **Clear data**, **Clear cache**, or **Clear defaults**.

Uninstalling third-party applications

You can uninstall any application you downloaded and installed from the Play Store.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Application manager**.
2. Tap the third-party application, and from the **Application info** screen, tap **Uninstall**.

S Voice

Launches your phone's built-in voice recognition system that allows you to initiate several common tasks without having to touch the phone. Features include: Call, Text, Navigate, Play music, Memo, and Driving mode.

- From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**S Voice**).

For more information, refer to “Using S Voice” on page 74.

Search

Use Google Search to search the Web.

- From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Search**) and enter the search text.
— or —

Tap  on the Google Search bar and say the search information.

Settings

This icon navigates to the sound and phone settings for your phone. It includes such settings as: display, security, memory, and any extra settings associated with your phone.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Settings).
— or —
Press  →  and then tap **Settings**.

For more information, refer to “*Changing Your Settings*” on page 233.

Slacker Radio

This application offers free, Internet radio for mobile phones.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Slacker Radio).

Important! You must register and create a free account prior to using this service.

2. If prompted, enter your Email address and password.
— or —
Tap **Create Account** if you have not created an account.

3. Begin selecting the music you want to listen to.

T-Mobile Name ID

Allows you to modify the on-screen Caller ID information. Name ID identifies unknown callers by Name, City, and State.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (T-Mobile Name ID).
2. Choose an on-screen option.

T-Mobile TV

T-Mobile TV is an application that allows you to get live TV and Video on Demand.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (T-Mobile TV).

For more information, refer to “*T-Mobile TV*” on page 174.

TecTiles

Although not installed by default, this application works with TecTiles to automatically change settings, launch selected applications, or many other useful features.

Note: TecTiles are sold separately.

You can scan a TecTile by turning on your device, enabling NFC, and then tapping the back of your device to the TecTile. For more information, refer to *“Near Field Communication”* on page 242.

Important! The NFC feature must be enabled prior to using TecTiles.

Turning on the NFC feature:

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) → Settings → More settings → NFC.

Installing the TecTile application:

1. Tap the back of the device to a TecTile to automatically be directed to the Play Store’s TecTile application and select **Download**. If you do not already have it, follow the on-screen instructions to download it from the Play Store.
– or –
Navigate to the Play Store, search for and install the **TecTile** application.
2. Verify the TecTile app () appears within the Applications screen.



Programming your TecTile

1. Ensure NFC feature is on and the TecTile app is loaded to your device.
2. Launch the TecTile application ().
3. Read the on-screen information and tap **OK**.
4. Select the TecTile type and the action. Choose from:
 - **Settings & Apps:** creates a TecTile that will change device settings or launch an application. Choose from Change Phone Settings, Launch an App, Join a Wi-Fi Network, or Show a Message.
 - **Phone & Text:** creates a TecTile that will either call or text a designated recipient. The outgoing text message can also be pre-programmed into the TecTile. Choose from Make a Call, Send a Text Message, Share a Contact, or Start a Google Talk Conversation.
 - **Location & Web:** creates a TecTile that shares either a Web page or address, or checks you in on a social network application. Choose from Show an Address or Location, Foursquare Check In, Facebook Check In, or Open a Web Page.

- **Social:** creates a TecTile that updates your social network. Choose from Update Facebook Status, Facebook Like, Tweet a Status, Follow a Twitter User, Connect on LinkedIn.
5. Follow the on-screen programming instructions.
 6. Once you have configured and programmed your TecTile action, hold the device over your TecTile to upload the new programming information.
 7. Place the TecTile in a convenient location.

Note: TecTiles do not work on metal surfaces.

For more information, visit us at: www.samsung.com/us/tectile.

To program your TecTile to send a text message:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (TecTile).
2. Select **Phone & Text → Send Text Message**.
3. Fill in the **Recipient's Number** and **Recipient's Name** fields with your contact information.
 - This is used as the To address for the new outgoing text message that is sent when a user swipes their device over the TecTile.

4. Enter a text message into the **Message Content** field.
 - For example, if you wanted your child to send you a text message when they get home, the TecTile would be programmed to send you a new text message to your cell number with the message string "I'm Home".
5. Tap **Next**.
6. Place the device over the TecTile to program the action into the TecTile.
7. Confirm the TecTile is functioning properly and place it on its new location.

To program your TecTile to join you to a Wi-Fi network:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (TecTile).
2. Select **Settings & Apps → Join a WiFi Network**.
3. Tap  (Connect to Wi-Fi) to locate and connect to an available Wi-Fi.
— or —
Enter the SSID information (name of the Wi-Fi).
4. Select the Network security and enter your password.
5. Tap **Next**.

6. Place the device over the TecTile to program the action into the TecTile.
7. Confirm the TecTile is functioning properly and place it on its new location.

Talk

You can instant message with Google Talk. Google Talk allows you to communicate with other people who are also connected with Google Talk on the phone or on the web.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Talk).

For more information, refer to “*Google Talk*” on page 141.

TeleNav GPS Navigator

This is a driving aid that uses both audible and visual directions for GPS navigation.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (TeleNav GPS Navigator).
2. If prompted, read the GPS Settings notification, tap GPS Settings button and follow the on-screen prompts to enable the necessary GPS location feature.

3. Read the agreement and tap **Accept** to accept the terms, or tap **Exit** to close the window. Wait for the application to load required first-time use files.
4. If prompted, select to either **Upgrade to Premium** (first 30 days or with Annual Plan) or use the **Use Basic Navigation at no charge**.
5. Use the available on-screen functions.

Video Player

The Video player application plays video files stored on your microSD card.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Applications) →  (Video player).

For more information, refer to “*Using the Video Player*” on page 158.

Visual Voicemail

Visual Voicemail enables users to view a list of people who left a voicemail message, and listen to the any message they want without being limited to chronological order.

- From the Home screen, tap  (Applications) →  (Visual Voicemail).

For more information, refer to “Visual Voicemail” on page 23.

Voice Recorder

The Voice Recorder allows you to record an audio file up to one minute long and then immediately send it as a message.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Voice Recorder).
2. Tap  (Record) to record an audio file.
3. Tap  (Stop) to stop recording. The file automatically saves to the Voice list.
4. From the Recorded files page, press  and then tap **Share via** and select a method in which to share this audio file. Selections are: Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Evernote - Create Note, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct. Refer to each specific section, depending on the method you selected to send this voice recording.

VPN Client

This is a full-featured VPN Client that provides support for the latest IPSec VPN standards and provides interoperability with support for all major VPN Gateways.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Applications) →  (VPN Client).
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the VPN Client.

YouTube

YouTube is a video sharing website on which users can upload and share videos, and view them in MPEG-4 format.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (YouTube).
2. When the screen loads you can begin searching and viewing posted videos.

To configure YouTube Settings:

- Press  and then tap **Settings** and configure the following parameters:
 - **General**
 - **High quality on mobile**, when enabled, allows you to start all videos in high quality mode while you are connected to a mobile network.
 - **Caption font size** allows you to set the font size used by on-screen captions. Choose from: Small, Medium, Large, or Huge.
 - **Uploads** specifies network preferences for uploads.

- **Search**

- **Clear search history** allows you to clear previous YouTube searches from showing up in the YouTube search box.
- **SafeSearch filtering** allows you to configure block settings for videos containing restricted content. This option blocks these videos from appearing within your search results. Choose from: Don't filter, Moderate, or Strict blocking.

- **About**

- **Help** provides answers to most YouTube questions.
- **Feedback** allows you to provide user feedback to YouTube.
- **Google Mobile Terms of Service**
- **YouTube Terms of Service**
- **Google Mobile Privacy Policy**
- **YouTube Privacy Policy**
- **Open source licenses**
- **App version** displays the software version for the current YouTube application.

To watch a high quality video:

- Press  and then tap **Settings → General → High quality on mobile**.

Section 10: Connections

Your phone is equipped with features that allow you to quickly connect to the web.

Internet

Your device is equipped with a Google browser to navigate the mobile web. This section explains how to navigate the browser and use the basic features.

Accessing the Internet

To access the Browser:

- From the Home screen, tap  (Applications) →  (Internet).

Note: You must disable your Wi-Fi connection if you wish to view the web2go® home page (<http://home.web2go.com/>).

Navigating with the Browser

1. Tap an entry to select an item.
2. Sweep the screen with your finger in an up or down motion to scroll through a website.
3. Press  to return to the previous page.

Browser Options

1. From the top of the browser screen, select one of the available options:
 - **Refresh:** reloads the current page.
 - **Bookmarks:** provides access to the Bookmarks screen.
 - **Windows:** displays a list of the windows you have open.— or —

From the home page, press  to access the following options:

- **Forward:** forwards the browser to another web page.
- **New window:** launches a new browser window. By default, this screen shows the web2go home page.
- **Add bookmark:** allows you to add a URL to your bookmark list.
- **Add shortcut to home:** creates a shortcut to the web2go Home page and then places it on an open area on an available extended screen.
- **Share page:** allows you to share the page using Gmail or as a message.
- **Find on page:** allows you to search in the current page.

- **Desktop view:** allows you to assign the browser to display the current page in the desktop view (to closely mimic the display as it would appear on a Desktop computer).
- **Save for offline reading:** allows you to store the current page in memory so that it can be read later even if you loose your Internet connection.
- **Color:** allows you to manually set one of four available color levels associated with different power saving profiles. The higher the power saving level, the less intense the on-screen color saturation.
- **Downloads:** displays the download history.
- **Print:** provides print access on compatible Samsung printers.
- **Settings:** allows you to change the way you view your web pages by changing these options. See “Browser Settings” on page 219.

Entering a URL

You can access a website quickly by entering the URL. Websites are optimized for viewing on your phone.

To enter a URL and go to a particular website:

- From the homepage tap the **URL** field at the top of the screen, enter the URL and tap **Go**.

Note: This is not the same application as the Google Search Widget. The web2go screen can not be accessed via a Wi-Fi connection.

Search the Internet

To perform an Internet search using keywords:

1. From within the Google search application, tap the **Google** search field, enter the keyword(s) to search using the on-screen keypad.
2. Tap  from the list of search results that are displayed.
3. Tap a link to view the website.

Adding and Deleting Windows

You can have up to eight Internet windows open at one time.

To add a new window:

1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows) →  (New window).
2. A new browser window displays.

Note: The number of currently open windows is displayed at the bottom of the Windows screen.

3. Scroll across the screen to view the currently active windows and tap an entry to launch the selected Internet window.

To delete an existing window:

1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows).
2. Scroll across the available windows and locate your target window.
3. Tap  next to the listing to delete the window.

Going Incognito

The incognito feature allows you to view Internet sites outside of the normal browsing. Pages viewed in this incognito window won't appear within your browser history or search history, and no traces (such as cookies) are left on your device.

Note: Any downloaded files will be preserved and will stay on your device after you exit the incognito mode.

To add a new incognito window:

1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows) →  (Incognito).
2. A new browser window displays.

Note: The incognito icon appears in the upper-left of the new browser window while you are in this mode.

To exit from the incognito window:

1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows) →  (New window).
2. Scroll across the available windows and locate the incognito window.

3. Tap  next to the incognito listing to delete this window.

Using Bookmarks

While navigating a website, you can bookmark a site to quickly and easily access it at a future time. The URLs (website addresses) of the bookmarked sites display in the Bookmarks page. From the Bookmarks page you can also view your Most visited websites and view your History.

1. From the webpage, tap  (**Bookmarks**).

The **Bookmarks** page displays. Additional pages include **History** and **Saved pages**.

2. Press  to display the following options:
 - **List/Thumbnail view**: Select **Thumbnail view** (default) to view a thumbnail of the webpage with the name listed, or select **List view** to view a list of the bookmarks with Name and URL listed.
 - **Create folder**: Creates a new folder in which to store new bookmarks.
 - **Change order**: Rearranges the current bookmarks.
 - **Move to folder**: Selected bookmarks are moved to a selected folder.
 - **Delete**: Erases selected bookmarks.

3. Tap a bookmark to view the webpage, or touch and hold a bookmark for the following options:
 - **Open**: Opens the webpage of the selected bookmark.
 - **Open in new window**: Opens the webpage in a new window.
 - **Edit bookmark**: Allows you to edit the name or URL of the bookmark. For more information, refer to *“Editing Bookmarks”* on page 218.
 - **Add shortcut to home**: Adds a shortcut to the bookmarked webpage to your phone’s Home screen.
 - **Share link**: Allows you to share a URL address via Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Evernote>Create note, Facebook, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
 - **Copy link URL**: Allows you to copy the URL address to use in a message.
 - **Delete bookmark**: Allows you to delete a bookmark. For more information, refer to *“Deleting Bookmarks”* on page 218.
 - **Set as homepage**: Sets the bookmark to your new homepage.

Adding Bookmarks

1. From the webpage, tap  → **Add bookmark**.
2. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the name of the bookmark and the URL.
3. Assign a folder location. **Home** is the default.
4. Tap **Save**. The new save page now appears on the Bookmarks page.

Editing Bookmarks

1. From the Bookmarks page, touch and hold the bookmark you want to edit.
2. Tap **Edit bookmark**.
3. Use the on-screen keypad to edit the name of the bookmark or the URL.
4. Tap **Save** or **Cancel** to exit the operation.

Deleting Bookmarks

1. From the Bookmarks page, touch and hold the bookmark you want to delete.
2. Tap **Delete bookmark**.
3. At the confirmation window, tap **OK**.

Emptying the Cookies

A cookie is a small file placed on your phone by a website during navigation. In addition to containing some site-specific information, a cookie can also contain some personal information (such as a username and password) which might pose a security risk if not properly managed. You can clear these cookies from your phone at any time.

1. From an active Web page, press  and then tap **Settings → Privacy and security → Clear all cookie data**.
2. Tap **OK** to delete the cookies or tap **Cancel** to exit.

Using Web History

The History list displays a list of the most recently viewed websites. These entries can be used to return to previously unmarked web pages.

1. From the webpage, tap  → **History** tab.
2. Select a visited range category. Choose from: Today, Yesterday, or Most visited.
3. Tap an entry to display the webpage.
– or –

Press  and then tap **Clear history** to delete the current History list.

Using Most Visited

The Most visited list provides you with a list of the most visited and bookmarked websites. These entries are used to return to previously unmarked web pages.

1. From the webpage, tap  → **History** → **Most visited** tab.

A list of your most frequently visited webpages displays. The most frequently visited web pages display at the top of the list.

2. Tap any entry to display the selected webpage.

Browser Settings

To configure browser settings:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Internet**).

2. Press  and then tap **Settings**.

3. Choose an option from the following categories:

General:

- **Set home page:** Sets the current home page for the Web browser.
- **Form auto-fill:** Allows you to fill in Web forms with a single tap.

- **Auto-fill text:** Allows you to set the text used for the Web form auto-fill feature.

Privacy and security:

- **Clear cache:** Deletes all currently cached data. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Clear history:** Clears the browser navigation history. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Show security warnings:** Notifies you if there is a security issue with the current website. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Accept cookies:** Allows sites, that require cookies, to save and read cookies from your device.
- **Clear all cookie data:** Deletes all current browser cookie files.
- **Remember form data:** Allows the device to store data from any previously filled out forms. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Clear form data:** Deletes any stored data from previously filled out forms. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Enable location:** Allows websites to request access to your location.

- **Clear location access:** Clears location access for all websites. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Remember passwords:** Stores usernames and passwords for visited sites. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Clear passwords:** Deletes any previously stored usernames or passwords. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Enable notifications:** Enables notifications for all websites. Select either: Always on, On demand (user driven), or Off.
- **Clear notifications:** Clears Web notification access for all websites. Tap **OK** to complete the process.

Accessibility:

- **Force zoom:** Allows you to override a website's zoom setting and forces a zoom view.
- **Text size:** Allows you to manually adjust the size of the on-screen text size (Scale text up and down), Zoom amount on double tap, and minimum font size via the use of an on-screen slider.

- **Inverted rendering:** Allows you to adjust the way a Web page is displayed to make it easier to view or read. Enabling this feature causes a page to rendered in reverse - Black becomes white and vice versa. On-screen white text is displayed as white text on a black background.
- **Contrast:** Allows you to adjust the on-screen contrast.

Note: The Contrast feature is disabled until the Inverted rendering function is active.

Advanced:

- **Select search engine:** Allows you to choose a default search engine for your phone. Choose from: **Google**, **Yahoo!**, or **Bing**.
- **Open in background:** New pages are launched in a separate page and displayed behind the current one. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Enable JavaScript:** Enables javascript for the current Web page. Without this feature, some pages may not display properly. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Enable plug-ins:** Allows the download of plug-ins such as Adobe Flash.
- **Default storage:** Sets the default storage to Memory card.

- **Website settings:** View advanced settings for individual websites.
- **Default zoom:** Adjusts the zoom feature. Set to Far, Medium, or Close.
- **Open pages in overview:** Displays an overview of recently viewed web pages.
- **Auto-fit pages:** Allows web pages to be resized to fit as much of the screen as possible.
- **Block pop-ups:** Prevents popup advertisement or windows from appearing on-screen. Remove the check mark to disable this function.
- **Text encoding:** Adjusts the current text encoding.
- **Reset to default:** Clears all browser data and resets all settings to default.

Bandwidth Management:

- **Preload search results:** Allows the browser to preload high confidence search results in the background. If the device can accurately guess your in progress search, it will preempt you by beginning to load the matching Web page before you complete the search request.

- **Load images:** Allows web page images to load along with the other text components of a loaded website.

Labs:

- **Quick controls:** allows you to enable on-screen quick controls via the use of Swype thumb actions.
- **Full screen:** Allows Web pages to be resized to fit as much of the screen as possible.

Bluetooth

About Bluetooth

Bluetooth is a short-range communications technology that allows you to connect wirelessly to a number of Bluetooth devices, such as headsets and hands-free car kits, and Bluetooth-enabled handhelds, computers, printers, and wireless devices. The Bluetooth communication range is usually up to approximately 30 feet.

Turning Bluetooth On and Off

To turn Bluetooth on:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider  to the right to turn it on .

The slider color indicates the activation status. When active,  displays in the Status area.

To turn Bluetooth off:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider  to the left to turn it off .

Bluetooth Status Indicators

The following icons show your Bluetooth connection status at a glance:



Displays when Bluetooth is active.



Displays when Bluetooth is connected (paired) and communicating.



Displays when Bluetooth technology is active and there is an available open and visible bluetooth device.

Bluetooth Settings

The Bluetooth settings menu allows you to set up many of the characteristics of your device's Bluetooth service, including:

- Entering or changing the name your device uses for Bluetooth communication and description
- Setting your device's visibility (or "discoverability") for other Bluetooth devices
- Displaying your device's Bluetooth address

To access the **Bluetooth Settings** menu:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Bluetooth**.
2. Verify Bluetooth is active (indicated by .
3. Press  and tap the **Device name**, **Visible time-out**, and **Received files** fields to set the options.

To change your Bluetooth name:

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap **Device name**.
3. Enter a new name.
4. Tap **OK** to complete the rename process.

To set visibility:

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the top of the Bluetooth settings page, toggle the state of the visibility check mark. Activating this feature enabled your device visible allows other devices to pair and communicate.

Note: Your device visibility is based on the time set within the Visible time-out field (2 Minutes, 5 Minutes, 1 Hour, or Never timeout). Press  (Menu) → **Visible time-out**. This value appears as a countdown within this **Visible time-out** field.

To scan for Bluetooth devices:

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the bottom of the Bluetooth settings page, tap **Scan** to search for visible external Bluetooth-compatible devices such as headsets, devices, printers, and computers.

To review your Bluetooth received files:

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, press  and then tap **Received files**.

Pairing Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth pairing process allows you to establish trusted connections between your device and another Bluetooth device. When you pair devices, they share a passkey, allowing for fast, secure connections while bypassing the discovery and authentication process.

Note: Pairing between two Bluetooth devices is a one-time process. Once pairing is established the devices continue to recognize their partnership and exchange information without entering a passcode.

To pair your device with another Bluetooth device:

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap the **Visibility** field (shown by the device name).
Your device must be visible to successfully pair with an external device. This is shown by a green check mark.

3. Tap **Scan**. Your device displays a list of discovered in-range Bluetooth devices.
4. Tap a device from the list to initiate pairing.
5. Enter the passkey or PIN code, if needed, and tap **OK**.
6. The external device must accept the connection and enter your device's PIN code.

Once successfully paired to an external device,  displays in the Status area.

Note: Due to different specifications and features of other Bluetooth-compatible devices, display and operations may be different, and functions such as transfer or exchange may not be possible with all Bluetooth-compatible devices.

Disconnecting a Paired Bluetooth Device

Disconnecting a paired device breaks the connection between the device and your phone, but retains the knowledge of the pairing. At a later point when you wish to reconnect the device, there is no need to setup the connection information again.

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap the previously paired device (from the bottom of the page).
3. Tap **OK** to confirm disconnection.

Note: Disconnections are manually done but often occur automatically if the paired device goes out of range of your phone or it is powered off.

Deleting a Paired Bluetooth Device

Deleting a device from your list removes its “connection record” and upon reconnection would require that you re-enter all the previous pairing information.

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap  (**Settings**) → **Unpair** to delete the paired device.

Sending Contacts via Bluetooth

Depending on your paired devices' settings and capabilities, you may be able to send pictures, Contact information, or other items using a Bluetooth connection.

Note: Prior to using this feature, Bluetooth must first be enabled on both your phone and the external device, and the recipient's device must be visible.

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active and your device is visible.
2. From the Home screen, tap  (**Contacts**).
3. Touch and hold the entry from the list to display the on-screen context menu.
4. Tap **Share namecard via** → **Bluetooth** and select a paired external Bluetooth device.

Note: The external Bluetooth device must be visible and communicating for the pairing to be successful.

5. A Bluetooth share notification displays in your notifications list.

Enable Downloading for Web Applications

Important! Before you can download a web application you must insert an SD into the phone and enable the **Unknown sources** feature (enables downloading). For more information, refer to *"Installing the microSD Memory Card"* on page 11. Also, see *"Mounting the SD Card"* on page 63

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security** → **Unknown sources** check box.
2. Tap **OK** to allow install of non-Play Store applications. Tap again to remove the check mark and disable the installation of non-Play Store applications.

Warning! Not all web applications are safe to download. In order to protect your phone and data, use Play Store to install web applications. For more information, refer to *"Downloading a New Google Application"* on page 203.

PC Connections

You can connect your device to a PC using an optional PC data cable using various USB connection modes.

Media storage: allows you to use the onboard storage capacity of both the device and optional microSD to store and upload files. This feature allows your computer to detect the device as a removable storage drive.

Kies: allows you to manage music, movies and photos. You can also backup precious contacts and calendars, download apps and podcasts and automatically upgrade device firmware. Kies conveniently syncs your life across all your devices.

Note: To sync your device to your computer it is highly recommended that you install Samsung Kies which is available at <http://www.samsung.com/kies> (for Windows/Mac).

Note: If you are a Windows XP user, ensure that you have Windows XP Service Pack 3 or higher installed on your computer. Also, ensure that you have Samsung Kies 2.0 or Windows Media Player 10 or higher installed on your computer.

Connecting as a Storage Device

You can connect your device to a PC as a removable disk and access the file directory. If you insert a memory card in the device, you can also access the files directory from the memory card by using the device as a memory card reader.

Note: The file directory of the memory card displays as a removable disk, separate from the internal memory.

1. Connect the USB cable to the device and connect the cable to the computer. After a few seconds, a pop-up window displays on the PC when connected.
2. Open the folder to view files.
3. Copy files from the PC to the memory card.

Prior to using Kies for Phone Update

Before using Kies to upgrade your device, it is recommended that you backup your personal data prior to use.

To export a Contact list to your microSD card:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Contacts**).
2. Press  and then tap **Import/Export**.
3. Tap **Export to SD card** → **OK**. For more information, refer to “Export/Import” on page 115.

Verify your images and videos are on your microSD card:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Apps**) →  (**Gallery**).
2. Verify the Gallery contains all of your pictures and videos.
3. Remove the back cover and remove the internal microSD card prior to initiating a Kies air update.

Enabling USB Debugging

USB debugging must be enabled before being able to use the Development feature.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Developer options**.
2. Tap the **USB debugging** field to verify the feature is active before connecting your USB cable.
3. Using an optional PC data cable, connect the multifunction jack on your device to a PC.

Wi-Fi

About Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi (short for "wireless fidelity") is a term used for certain types of Wireless Local Area Networks (WLAN). Wi-Fi communication requires access to an existing and accessible Wireless Access Point (WAP). These WAPs can either be Open (unsecured) as within most Hot Spots, or Secured (requiring knowledge of the Router name and password).

Note: After you complete a connection to an active Wi-Fi network, the Wi-Fi Calling feature will automatically be enabled.

Activating Wi-Fi

By default, your device's Wi-Fi feature is turned off (deactivated). Activating Wi-Fi allows your device to discover and connect to compatible in-range WAPs (Wireless Access Points).

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**.

2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider  to the right to turn it on .

The slider color indicates the activation status. The device scans for available in-range wireless networks and displays them under Wi-Fi networks on the same screen.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
The network names and security settings (Open network or Secured with WEP) of detected Wi-Fi networks display in the Wi-Fi networks section.
2. Tap the network you wish to connect to.

Note: When you select an open network you are automatically connected.

3. Enter a wireless password (if necessary).
4. Tap **Connect**.

Wi-Fi Status Indicators

The following icons indicate the Wi-Fi connection status:



Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and configured for a direct connection to another compatible device in the same direct communication mode.



Displays when Wi-Fi is being used as a Mobile HotSpot feature is active and communicating.

Manually Add a New Network Connection

1. From the Wi-Fi network screen, tap **Add Wi-Fi network**.
2. Enter the Network SSID (the name of your Wireless Access Point).
3. Tap the **Security** field and select a security option. This must match the current security setting on your target WAP.
4. Enter your WAP's password if the WAP is secure.
5. Tap **Save** to store the new information and connect to the target WAP.

Note: No prompt to enter the Wireless Access Point (WAP) key displays if this is the second time to connect to a previously accessed or secured wireless network. The WAP key is required when the device is reset using factory default settings.

Deactivating Wi-Fi

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider  to the left to turn it off .
– or –
Activate and Deactivate Wi-Fi from the Notification bar.

Note: Use of wireless data connections such as Wi-Fi and Bluetooth can reduce battery life and use times.

Manually Scan for a Wi-Fi Network

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Wi-Fi**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider  to the right to turn it on .
3. Tap **Scan**.

Wi-Fi Advanced Settings

The Wi-Fi settings - Advanced menu allows you to set up many of the device's Wi-Fi services, including:

- Setting the Wi-Fi sleep policy
- Viewing the device's MAC Address
- Configuring use of either a DHCP or Static IP

To access the Wi-Fi Advanced Settings menu:

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Wi-Fi → Advanced**.

USB Tethering

This option allows you to share your device's mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your device and a single computer. The Mobile HotSpot connectivity is a wireless version of this same functionality and allows you to provide Internet connectivity to multiple devices.

Note: You can not mount your device's microSD card to your computer while using the USB tethering feature. If additional software or USB drivers are required, navigate to: <http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads>.

To connect using USB Tethering:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Mobile HotSpot).
— or —
Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Tethering and Mobile HotSpot**.
2. Plug in the USB cable between your computer and your device.
3. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu. This places a green check mark next to the entry and activates the feature. A Tethering or HotSpot active notification briefly appears on the screen.
Look for the Tethering active icon  in the Status bar area of the screen.
4. Read the on-screen notification regarding data use and tap **OK**.

To disconnect tethering:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Mobile HotSpot).
2. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu to remove the check mark and deactivate the feature.

3. Remove the USB cable from the device.

Mobile HotSpot

This feature allows you to turn your device into a Wi-Fi hotspot. The feature works best when used in conjunction with HSPA+ (4G) data services (although 3G service can also be used).

The Mobile HotSpot connectivity is a wireless version of this same functionality and allows you to provide Internet connectivity to multiple devices.

Important! The Mobile hotspot service cannot be active when device is connected to Wi-Fi. Please disconnect your Wi-Fi connection prior to active this service.

Note: You must have a tethering plan on your account in order to use the Mobile HotSpot. You cannot use data on the device while using Mobile HotSpot.

To activate the Mobile HotSpot service:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Mobile HotSpot).
— or —
Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Tethering and Mobile HotSpot**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Mobile HotSpot** slider  to the right to turn it on .
3. Read the on-screen notification regarding data use and tap **OK**.
4. Create a new Network SSID name and then write it down.
5. Tap **Save** to store the new settings.
6. Confirm the Mobile HotSpot icon  appears at the top of the screen.

Note: By default, the connection is secured.

Note: Using your Mobile HotSpot drains your device's battery much faster. The best way to keep using the device as a HotSpot is by connecting to a Charger.

To connect to the HotSpot:

1. Enable Wi-Fi (wireless) functionality on your target device (laptop, media device, etc.).
2. Scan for Wi-Fi networks from the external device and select your device's Mobile HotSpot name from the network list.
 - The SSID name for your device's hotspot is determined by what you entered into the **Network SSID** field.
 - You can change the name by tapping **Mobile HotSpot** → **Configure** → **Network SSID** and changing the entry.
3. Select this HotSpot and follow your on-screen instructions to complete the connection.
4. Launch your Web browser to confirm you have an Internet connection.

Section 11: Changing Your Settings

This section explains the sound and phone settings for your device. It includes such settings as: display, security, memory, and any extra settings associated with your device.

Accessing Settings

- From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (Settings).
— or —

Press  →  and then tap **Settings**. The Settings screen displays.

Wi-Fi Settings

This section describes the Wi-Fi settings. For more information, refer to “Wi-Fi” on page 228.

Activating Wi-Fi

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi** slider  to the right to turn it on . The device scans for available in-range wireless networks and displays them under Wi-Fi networks on the same screen.

Wi-Fi settings

Once set up for Wi-Fi connectivity, your device automatically uses Wi-Fi, when available, for all your mobile services.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi** → **Advanced**. Configure the settings as desired.

The available Wi-Fi connection are displayed with a security type displayed next to them.

Network Notification

By default, when Wi-Fi is on, you receive notifications in the Status bar anytime your phone detects an available Wi-Fi network. You can deactivate this feature if you do not want to receive notifications.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Wi-Fi → Advanced**.
2. Tap **Network notification**. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates Network notification is active.
3. Tap **Network notification** again to remove the check mark and deactivate this feature.

Note: Both your Wi-Fi MAC and IP address are also displayed.

Wi-Fi During Sleep

By default, when your device enter a sleep mode, your Wi-Fi connection stays on all the time. If the feature is Never enabled during sleep that current data usage is taken over by your SIM and its network connection.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Wi-Fi → Advanced → Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep**.
2. Select an available option:
 - **Always:** maintains your current active Wi-Fi connection even during sleep.
 - **Only when plugged in:** maintains the active Wi-Fi connection only when the device detects it is connected to a power supply. This reduced the drain on your device's battery.
 - **Never (increase data usage):** shuts off the current Wi-Fi connection during sleep and diverts any current data usage to the cellular network connection.

Manually Adding a Wi-Fi Network

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi** → **Add Wi-Fi network**.
2. Enter the Network SSID (the name of your Wireless Access Point).
3. Tap the **Security** field and select a security option. This must match the current security setting on your target WAP (Wireless Access Point).
4. Enter your WAP's password if the WAP is secure.
5. Tap **Save** to store the new information and connect to the target WAP.

Note: An SSID is a unique key which identifies a wireless LAN. Its purpose is to stop other wireless equipment from accessing your LAN — whether accidentally or intentionally. To communicate, wireless devices must be configured with the same SSID.

Bluetooth settings

In this menu you can activate Bluetooth, view or assign a device name, activate your phone so other Bluetooth devices can discover it, or scan for other, available Bluetooth devices with which to pair. For more information, refer to “*Bluetooth*” on page 221.

Turning Bluetooth On and Off

To turn Bluetooth on:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider  to the right to turn it on .

The slider color indicates the activation status. When active,  displays in the Status area.

To turn Bluetooth off:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Bluetooth** slider  to the left to turn it off .

Note: Bluetooth must be enabled prior to use.

Activating the Device Name

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Bluetooth**.
2. Verify Bluetooth is active (indicated by  ON).
3. Press  and tap the **Device name**. The assigned device name displays.
4. Tap  to erase the current device name and enter a new name for this device using the keyboard.
5. Tap **OK** to confirm your setting.

Activating Visibility

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Bluetooth**.
2. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
3. From the top of the Bluetooth settings page, toggle the state of the visibility check mark. Activating this feature enabled your device visible allows other devices to pair and communicate.

Scanning for Devices

This option allows you to scan for active Bluetooth devices so you can pair with them.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Bluetooth**.
2. From the bottom of the Bluetooth settings page, tap **Scan** to search for visible external Bluetooth-compatible devices such as headsets, devices, printers, and computers.

Important! Some Bluetooth devices are secured and require a PIN number to confirm and pair with them.

3. Enter a PIN to pair with the device, if one is required, and tap **OK**.

Data Usage

Monitor and manage your device's data usage capabilities.

Features include activation/deactivation of network data usage, set mobile data usage for a set period of time, and view application data usage.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Data usage**.

To activate/deactivate Mobile data usage:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Data usage**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Mobile data** slider  to the right to turn it on .
3. In a single motion touch and slide the **Mobile data** slider  to the left to turn it off .

To set a mobile data limit:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Data usage**.
2. Place a check mark in the **Mobile data** field to activate mobile data usage.
3. Place a check mark in the **Set mobile data limit** field.
4. Read the on-screen disclaimer info and tap **OK**.

5. Touch and drag the far right ends of the Red or Orange horizontal lines to manually adjust both the Warning and Maximum data limits.
6. Touch and drag the bottom grey vertical lines to adjust the time frames.
7. Tap the **Data usage cycle** button and select either the current cycle or define your own by selecting **Change cycle**.
8. Press  and then select from the available on-screen options:
 - **Data roaming** allows you to connect to your service provider's partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage. For more information, refer to *"Data Roaming"* on page 239.
 - **Restrict background data** prevents background data usage. This can help prevent over usage of your data minutes.
 - **Show Wi-Fi usage** activates an additional Wi-Fi tab that shows you your Wi-Fi data usage.

More Settings

This tab displays additional wireless and network information.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.

Using Airplane mode

This mode allows you to use many of your device's features, such as Camera, Games, and more, when you are in an airplane or in any other area where making or receiving calls or data is prohibited.

Important! When your device is in Airplane mode, it cannot send or receive any calls or access online information or applications.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.
2. Tap **Airplane mode**. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates Airplane mode is active.
The Airplane mode icon  is displayed at the top of your screen.

Using Mobile networks

Before you use applications such as Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Mobile networks options.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks**.

The following options display:

Use packet data

Allows you to activate data usage on your device.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks** → **Use packet data**.

Data Roaming

Data roaming allows you to connect to your service provider's partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Data roaming** to connect to data services while roaming outside your network.
— or —

Tap **Data roaming** again to remove the green check mark and deactivate the feature.

Access Point Names

To access a wireless access point:

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks** → **Access Point Names**. A list of the Access point names display. The active access point displays a bright green, filled circle to the right of the name.

Network mode

You can configure your phone to either manually detect and use either a 2G (GSM) or 3G (WCDMA) data network connection.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks** → **Network mode**.

Using the 4G Network

To confirm you are always using the fastest possible connection, the phone has an automatic detection method where it finds both the fastest and most stable connection/communication method. This phone is capable of using either 4G/3G services for this connection.

Note: WCDMA is only available on the 4G network.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks** → **Network mode**.
2. Tap **GSM/WCDMA (Auto mode)**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active. This is the default mode for this phone.

Using the 2G (EDGE) Network

If you are not using applications that require the 3G network speed (any application that accesses the network or uses a browser), using the 2G network saves battery life.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks** → **Network mode**.
2. Tap **GSM only**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active.

Note: Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

Using the 3G Network

If you are using applications that require the 3G network speed, follow these instructions to connect to the 3G network.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks** → **Network mode**.
2. Tap **WCDMA only**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active.

Network Operators

Using this feature you can view the current network connection. You can also scan and select a network operator manually, or set the network selection to Automatic.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Network operators**. The current network connection displays at the bottom of the list.

Important! You must deactivate data service prior to searching for an available network.

3. Tap **Search now** to manually search for a network.
4. Tap **Select automatically** to automatically select a network connection.

Note: Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

Default Setup Options

Your phone default is set to Automatic (to automatically search for an available network. You can set this option to Manual to select a network each time you connect.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Mobile networks** → **Network operators**.
2. Tap **Default setup**.
3. Tap **Manual** to locate and connect to a network manually.
— or —

Tap **Automatic** to allow the device to automatically select a network.

USB Tethering and Mobile HotSpot

This option allows you to share your phone's mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your phone and computer. A wireless version of this same functionality would be the Mobile AP feature.

Note: You can not mount your phone's microSD card to your computer while using the USB tethering feature. If additional software or USB drivers are required, navigate to: <http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads>.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Tethering and Mobile HotSpot**.

For more information, refer to “USB Tethering” on page 230.

For more information, refer to “Mobile HotSpot” on page 231.

Near Field Communication

This feature is used to read and exchange tags. When used in conjunction with Android Beam, your device can be used to beam application content when NFC-capable devices are touched. For more information, refer to “*TecTiles*” on page 207.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.
2. Tap the **NFC** field. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicating it is enabled.

Note: Enabling NFC also enables Android Beam and S Beam.

Android Beam

This feature (when activated via NFC) allows you to directly beam application content to another NFC-capable device when they are in direct contact. These files are typically small such as Calendar and Contact entries.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.
2. Verify the NFC feature is active.

3. Tap **Android Beam** and make sure the feature is turned on.
4. If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide the **Android Beam** slider to the right to turn it on .
5. Complete the transfer process between the two NFC-enabled devices by placing them back to back.

S Beam

This feature (when activated via NFC) allows you to beam large files directly to another compatible device that is in direct contact. These files can be larger, such as Videos, HD pictures, and other large files. You can beam images and videos from your gallery, music files from your music player, and more.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.
2. Verify the NFC feature is active.
3. Tap **S Beam** and make sure the feature is turned on.
4. If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide the **S Beam** slider to the right to turn it on .

5. Complete the transfer process between the two NFC-enabled devices by placing them back to back.

This feature can come in very handy to quickly share pictures between users with compatible S Beam devices. For more information, refer to *“Using S Beam to Share Pictures”* on page 150.

Wi-Fi Direct Setup and Settings

You can configure your device to connect directly with other Wi-Fi capable devices. This is an easy way to transfer data between devices. These devices must be enabled for Wi-Fi direct communication. This connection is direct and not via a HotSpot or WAP.

Note: Activating this feature will disconnect your current Wi-Fi network connection.

To give your Wi-Fi Direct connection a unique name:

It can be difficult to pair to external devices if all you have is a generic name (ex: Android 12345). It is recommended you provide your connection with a unique name.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Wi-Fi Direct**.
2. Press  then tap **Device name**.

3. Edit the current name and tap **OK** to save the new identification.

To activate your connection:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Wi-Fi Direct** slider  to the right to turn it on . The slider color indicates the activation status.
3. Read the on-screen information and tap **OK**.
4. Tap **Scan** and select the single device name to begin the connection process to another Wi-Fi Direct compatible device.
– or –
Tap **Multi-connect** → **Scan** and select all the device names to begin the connection process to these Wi-Fi Direct compatible devices.

Note: The target device must also have Wi-Fi Direct service active and running before it can be detected by your device.

5. Tap **Done**. The direct connection is then established.

6. When prompted to complete the connection, tap **OK**.
The status field now reads “Connected” and your connected device is listed within the Wi-Fi Direct devices listing.

VPN settings

The VPN settings menu allows you to set up and manage Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).

Note: Before using VPN, you must first set up a screen unlock PIN or password. For more information, refer to “*Security*” on page 265.

Adding a VPN

Before you add a VPN you must determine which VPN protocol to use: PPTP, L2TP/IPSec PSK, L2TP/IPSec RSA, IPSec Xauth PSK, IPSec Xauth RSA, IPSec Hybrid RSA.

Important! Before you can use a VPN you must establish and configure one.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **VPN**.

2. If prompted, read the screen lock information and follow the on-screen steps to setup an unlock PIN or password.
3. Tap **Add VPN network**.
4. In the form that appears, fill in the information provided by your network administrator.
5. Tap **Save**.

Note: Similar setup process can be used for all available VPN types.

Connecting to a VPN

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **VPN**.
2. Tap the VPN entry you want to connect to.
3. Enter any requested credentials into the pop-up that opens.
4. Tap **Connect**.

Edit a VPN

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **VPN**.
2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to edit.
3. In the pop-up that opens, select **Edit network**.
4. Make the desired VPN setting changes.
5. Tap **Save**.

Delete a VPN

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **VPN**.
2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to delete.
3. Tap **Delete network** within the pop-up that opens up.

Wi-Fi Calling

You can configure your device to make and receive calls over an active Wi-Fi connection. Wi-Fi Calling is an excellent solution for coverage issues in and around the home or wherever cellular coverage is limited. Minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes. For more information, refer to “*Wi-Fi Calling*” on page 75.

1. Ensure that the **Wi-Fi connected** icon displays on the status bar.
2. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.
3. Tap the **Wi-Fi Calling** field and place a green check mark in the adjacent field. This check mark indicates the feature is active.

Wi-Fi Calling Settings

Important! A new ISIM card must be installed within the device prior to using this feature. Wi-Fi must first be active and communicating prior to launching Wi-Fi Calling.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Wi-Fi Calling Settings**.
2. Tap **Connection Preferences** and select a preference for use of the Wi-Fi Calling feature:
 - **Wi-Fi Preferred:** Wi-Fi network is preferred over cellular network when making calls. Calling requires you to stay in the Wi-Fi range.
 - **Wi-Fi Only:** Wi-Fi network is required for making calls. Calling requires you to stay in the Wi-Fi range.
 - **Cellular Preferred:** The cellular network is preferred over a Wi-Fi network when making calls.
3. Tap **OK** to save the setting.
4. Tap **Help** from the the main Wi-Fi Calling Settings page to navigate through either an on-screen tutorial or review the top 10 Wi-Fi Calling questions.

Kies via Wi-Fi

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings**.
2. Tap **Kies via Wi-Fi** → **OK**.
3. Select a network connection and follow the on-screen connection process.

Refer to the Kies process information for more information. For more information, refer to “PC Connections” on page 226.

Nearby devices

This option allows you to share your media files with nearby devices using DLNA and connected to the same Wi-Fi.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **More settings** → **Nearby devices**.
2. Verify Wi-Fi Direct is enabled and you are paired with the device you wish to detect and share content with.
3. Tap **File sharing** to enable the feature. This action activates the device’s ability to share files.
4. Verify  (**Nearby devices**) appears at the top of the screen.

5. At the Nearby devices prompt, read the disclaimer and tap **OK**.
6. Tap **Shared contents**, then check the media you would like to share. Tap **OK**.
7. Tap **Device name**, then use the on-screen keyboard to change the name shown to others. Tap **Save**.
8. Tap **Access control**, then what devices are allowed access. Choose from Allow all or Only allowed devices. The allowed devices are configured in the following Allowed devices list.
9. Tap **Allowed devices list**, then select the connected devices you would like to allow.
10. Tap **Not-allowed devices list**, then select the connected devices you would like to not allow.
11. Tap **Download to**, then select the destination of any downloaded (shared) content. Choose from USB storage (phone) or SD card.
12. Tap **Upload from other devices**, then select the actions you'll take when you upload content from other devices. Choose from either Always accept, Always ask, or Always reject.

Call Settings

To access the Call settings menu:

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings**.

Configuring General Call Settings

Configure the general call settings using this option.

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings**.
3. Tap one of the following options:
 - **Call rejection**: allows you to manage your rejection mode and rejection list.
 - **Auto reject mode**: sets the phone to automatically reject incoming calls or messages.
 - **Auto reject list**: provides access to current rejection entries and numbers.
 - **Set reject messages**: allows you to manage both existing rejection messages and create new ones.

- **Call alert:** allows you to assign call alert tones and activate call alerts and vibration.
 - **Call vibrations:** vibrates the phone when the called party answers.
 - **Call status tones:** assigns sounds settings during the call. Choose from: Call connect tone, Minute minder, and Call end tone.
 - **Alerts on call:** selects whether alarm and message notification is turned off during a call.
- **Call answering/ending:** allows you to manage the settings for answering and ending calls.
 - **Answering key** allows you to press a key to answer the phone.
 - **The Power key ends calls** allows you to press the power key to end the current call.
- **Auto screen off during calls:** allows you to force the screen to turn off during an active call.
- **Accessory settings for call:** allows you to assign headset settings during incoming calls.
 - **Automatic answering** configures the device to automatically answer and incoming call when a headset is detected.
 - **Automatic answering timer** configures the time delay before the device automatically accepts the incoming call.
 - **Outgoing call conditions** configures the connected Bluetooth device to make outbound calls within one of two settings: Even when device locked or Only when device unlocked.
- **Use extra vol. for calls:** activating this feature places an extra volume button on your currently active call screen.
- **Increase volume in pocket:** increases the ringtone volume when the device is in a pocket or a bag. Uses the proximity sensor to detect its location.
- **Call forwarding:** configures call forwarding options.
- **Additional settings:** allows you to configure additional call settings. For more information, refer to “*Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings*” on page 250.
- **Voicemail service:** allows you to assign the service.
- **Voicemail settings:** displays the settings for the voicemail.
- **Vibrate:** configures the vibrate settings. Choose from Always, Only in silent mode, or Never.
- **TTY mode:** allows you to configure the TTY settings. For more information, refer to “*TTY Mode*” on page 249.

- **Hearing aids:** allows you to enable/disable hearing aid compatibility. For more information, refer to “*HAC Mode*” on page 250.
- **Accounts:** allows you to add SIP accounts and receive incoming calls from those type of accounts.
- **Use Internet calling:** allows you to configure the incoming call and SIP account information.

Configuring Call Forwarding

1. Press  and then tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Call forwarding** → **Voice call**.
3. Tap an available option:
 - **Always forward:** incoming calls are re-routed to a secondary number that you specify.
 - **Forward when busy:** forwards all your calls to voicemail when your phone is busy.
 - **Forward when unanswered:** automatically forwards to your voicemail number when the phone is not answered, and otherwise allows you to enter a voicemail number.

- **Forward when unreachable:** automatically forwards to your voicemail number when the phone is not in service, or is turned off.

TTY Mode

A TTY (also known as a TDD or Text Telephone) is a telecommunications device that allows people who are deaf, hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your phone is compatible with select TTY devices. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY device to ensure that it is compatible with digital cell phones.

Your phone and TTY device will connect via a special cable that plugs into your phone's headset jack. If this cable was not provided with your TTY device, contact your TTY device manufacturer to purchase the connector cable.

1. Press  and then tap  (Phone).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **TTY mode**.
3. Tap **TTY Full**, **TTY HCO**, or **TTY VCO** to activate the feature, or **TTY Off** to deactivate the feature. Off is the default setting.

HAC Mode

This menu is used to activate or deactivate Hearing Aid Compatibility for this device.

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings**.
3. Tap the **Hearing aids** field to activate the feature (green check mark), or tap it again to deactivate the feature. Off is the default setting.

Configuring Additional Voice Call Settings

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Additional settings**.
3. Tap one of the following options:
 - **Caller ID**: chooses whether your number is displayed when someone answers your outgoing call. Choose from: Network default, Hide number, or Show number.
 - **Call barring**: blocks specific types of calls (All outgoing calls, International calls, etc.).
 - **Call waiting**: notifies you of an incoming call while you are on another call.

- **Auto redial**: automatically redial the dialed number if it is unable to connect or the call is cut off.
- **Fixed dialing numbers**: manages fixed dialing numbers. See description below.
- **Auto area code**: allows you to automatically prepend a specific area code to all outbound calls. In a single motion, touch and slide  to the right to turn the feature on . For more information, refer to “Using Auto Area Code” on page 250.

Using Auto Area Code

This feature prepends an area code to all outbound calls. When enabled, the designated prefix is always added before your dialed numbers.

Ex: If you were using 999 as your area code, 555-5555 would be dialed as 999 - 555-5555.

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Additional settings**.
3. In a single motion touch and slide the **Auto area code** slider  to the right to turn it on .

4. Tap **Auto area code**, enter a new prefix, and then tap **OK**.

Fixed Dialing Numbers

Fixed Dial Number (FDN), allows you to restrict outgoing calls to a limited set of phone numbers.

Enabling FDN

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Additional settings** → **Fixed dialing numbers**.
3. Tap **Enable FDN**.
4. At the prompt, enter your PIN2 code and tap **OK**.

Important! Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.
The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering an incorrect PIN2 code could cause the phone to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

Changing the PIN2 Code

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Additional settings** → **Fixed dialing numbers**.
3. Tap **Change PIN2**.
4. At the prompt, enter your old PIN2 code.
5. At the prompt, enter a new PIN2 code.
6. Confirm your PIN2 code.

Important! Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.
The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering the PIN2 incorrectly three times will cause the device to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

Managing the FDN List

When this feature is enabled, you can make calls only to phone numbers stored in the FDN list on the SIM card.

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Additional settings** → **Fixed dialing numbers**.
3. Tap **Enable FDN**.
4. At the prompt, enter your PIN2 code and tap **OK**. FDN is enabled.
5. Tap **FDN list** then press  and then tap **Add contact** or edit the contacts that were stored.

Important! Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.

The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering the PIN2 incorrectly three times will cause the device to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

Voicemail

You can view your voicemail number from this menu.

1. Press  and then tap  (**Phone**).
2. Press  and then tap **Call settings** → **Voicemail service**.
3. Tap **My carrier**.
4. If an additional voicemail service is in use (other than carrier), tap **Voice settings** to now view your selected voicemail number and information.

Sound Settings

From this menu you can control the sounds on the phone as well as configure the display settings.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Sound**.

The following options display:

Setup Silent Mode

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Sound**.
2. Tap **Silent mode**.
3. From the Silent mode menu, select either **Off**, **Vibrate** or **Mute**.

Note: This setting is independent of other call sounds settings. For example, if you have Silent mode enabled along with **Vibrate**, your phone won't play a ringtone, but will vibrate for an incoming call.

Note: Use both the Silent mode and enable the **Mute** option to guarantee no vibrations or sounds from your device. This really helps at night so you don't wake up hearing your device vibrating on a nearby counter or table.

Silent mode via Device Options Screen

Silent mode is convenient when you wish to stop the phone from making noise, in a theater for example. In Silent Mode the speaker is muted and the phone only vibrates to notify you of incoming calls, or other functions that normally have a defined tone or sound as an alert.

1. From the Home screen, press  (Power/Lock) until **Device options** displays.
2. Tap the silent mode button to activate or deactivate this mode (the current mode displays).

Adjusting the Volume Settings

The Volume menu now provides access to various volume settings within one on-screen popup menu.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Sound → Volume**.
2. Touch and drag the on-screen slider to assign the volume settings for any of the following volume levels.
 - **Music, video, games, and other media, Ringtone, Notifications or System.**
3. Tap **OK** to assign the volume levels.

Setup the Voice Call Ringtone

This option allows you to set the ringtone.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Sound**.
2. Tap **Device ringtone**.
3. Tap a ringtone from the available list. The ringtone briefly plays when selected.
4. Tap **OK** to assign a ringer.

Setup the Device Vibration

This option allows you to set your device to vibrate and ring.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Sound**.
2. Tap **Device vibration**.
3. Select a vibration pattern and tap **OK**.

Setting a Default Notification Ringtone

This option allows you to set the ringtone that will sound for notifications and alarms.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Sound → Default notifications**.
2. Tap one of the ringtones and tap **OK**.

Setting up Sound and Vibration

This option allows you to adjust the sound and vibration functions.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Sound**.
2. Tap the **Sound and vibration** field to activate the feature.

Audible System Tone Settings

These options are used when you use the dialing pad, make a screen selection, lock your screen, or tap the screen. Each time you press a key or make a selection the selected tone sounds.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Sound**.
2. Tap **Keytones** to activate a tone when you use on-screen keys. A check mark displayed next to these features indicates active status.
3. Tap **Touch sounds** to activate a tone when you touch the screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status.
4. Tap **Screen lock sound** to activate a tone when you use the Lock screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status.

Display Settings

In this menu, you can change various settings for the display such as the font, orientation, pop-up notifications, puzzle lock feature, animation, brightness, screen timeout, and power saving mode.

Adjusting the Screen Display

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Display**.
2. Configure the following screen display settings:
 - **Brightness**: adjusts the on-screen brightness level. For more information, refer to “*Adjusting Screen Brightness*” on page 256.
 - **Screen timeout**: adjusts the delay time before the screen automatically turns off. Selections are: 15 seconds, 30 seconds, 1 minute, 2 minutes, 5 minutes, and 10 minutes.
 - **Auto-rotate screen**: when enabled, the phone automatically switches from portrait to landscape orientation and vice versa. When this setting is disabled, the phone displays in portrait mode only.
 - **Touch key light duration**: to adjust the light duration of the touch keys.

- **Font style:** sets the fonts used on the LCD display. Selections are: **Default font**, **Choco cooky**, **Helvetica S**, **Rosemary**, or **Get fonts online**. Tap **Get fonts online** to download additional fonts.
- **Font size:** allows you to select which size of font is displayed.
- **Auto adjust screen tone:** adjusts the phone's LCD brightness level to automatically adjust and conserve battery power.
- **Display battery percentage:** to activate/deactivate the display of battery charge percentage atop the battery icon at the top of the screen.
- **Gyroscope calibration:** uses the built-in gyroscope to calibrate motion when the phone is in motion.

Adjusting Screen Brightness

This feature configures the LCD Brightness levels.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Display** → **Brightness**.
2. Tap **Automatic brightness** to allow the phone to self-adjust and tap **OK**.
– or –

Touch and slide the on-screen slider to adjust the level and tap **OK**.

Gyro Sensor Calibration

Calibrate your device by using the built-in gyroscope.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Display** → **Gyroscope calibration**.
2. Place the phone on a level surface and tap **Calibrate**. The phone adjusts the level of the accelerometer. During the calibration process a green circle appears on-screen and the center circle adjusts to the center position.

Wallpaper

The Wallpaper settings option allows you to set the Wallpaper for your Home screen, Lock screen, or both.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Wallpaper**.
2. Select an available option to change its current wallpaper.

For more information, refer to “*Managing Wallpapers*” on page 60.

LED Indicator

This option allows you to turn on your LED lights for charging, missed events, and incoming notifications. The light will turn on by default unless you turn them off.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **LED indicator**.
2. Tap the following LED indicator options to turn them on or off:
 - **Charging:** LED lights up when the device is connected to the charger.
 - **Low battery:** LED lights up when the battery level is low.
 - **Missed event:** LED lights up when you have missed calls, messages, or application events.

Motion Settings

This feature allows you to assign specific functions to certain phone actions that are detected by both the accelerometer and gyroscope.

To activate motion:

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Motion**.

Note: If Motion activation is not enabled, all motion services are greyed-out and disabled.

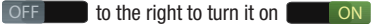
To activate different motion functions:

1. In a single motion touch and slide the **Motion** slider  to the right to turn it on .
2. Tap the desired on-screen motion option.
 - **Direct call:** Once enabled, the device will dial the currently displayed on-screen Contact entry as soon as you place the device to your ear.
 - **Smart alert:** Once enabled, pickup the device to be alerted and notified of you have missed any calls or messages.
 - **Double tap to top:** Once enabled, double tap the top of the device to be taken to the top of the current on-screen list.

- **Tilt to zoom:** Once enabled, you must be on a screen where content can be zoomed. In a single motion, touch and hold two points on the display then tilt the device back and forth to zoom in or out.
- **Pan to move icon:** Once enabled, touch and hold a desired application shortcut icon or widget on the screen. Once it detaches, move the device left or right to migrate it to a new location.
- **Pan to browse images:** Once enabled, touch and hold a desired on-screen image to pan around it. Move the device left or right to pan vertically or up and down to pan horizontally around the large on-screen image.
- **Shake to update:** Once enabled, shake your device to rescan for Bluetooth devices, rescan for Wi-Fi devices, Refresh a Web page, etc.
- **Turn over to mute/pause:** Once enabled, mute incoming calls and any playing sounds by turning the device over display down on a surface. This is the opposite of the pickup to be notified gesture.
- **Learn about motions:** Provides access to on-screen animated tutorials for all the available motions.

Power Saving Mode

This feature allows you both automatically set the phone to use a power saving mode and configure additional power saving options manually, all in an effort to conserve battery power.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Power saving**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the slider  to the right to turn it on .
3. Tap the following options to create a check mark and conserve power:
 - **CPU power saving:** allows you to limit the maximum performance of the CPU.
 - **Screen power saving:** allows you to lower the screen power level.
 - **Background color:** allows you to change the background color on email and internet to save power.
4. Tap **Learn about power saving** to learn about various ways to conserve battery power.

5. When the power gets low, confirm  appears at the top of the screen. This indicates the power saving mode is active.

SD Card & Device Storage

From this menu you can view the memory allocation for the memory card as well as mount or unmount the SD card.

For more information about mounting or unmounting the SD card, see “Using the SD Card” on page 62.

To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Storage**. The available memory displays under the Total space and SD card headings.

Battery Usage

This option allows you to view a list of those components using battery power. The amount of time the battery was used also displays. Battery usage displays in percentages per application.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Battery**. The battery level displays in percentage.
2. From the upper-right tap  (**Refresh**) to update the list.
– or –
Tap an entry to view more detailed information.

Note: Other applications may be running that affect battery use.

Application Manager

This device can be used for Android development. You can write applications in the SDK and install them on this device, then run the applications using the hardware, system, and network. This feature allows you to configure the device for development.

Warning! Because the device can be configured with system software not provided by or supported by Google or any other company, end-users operate these devices at their own risk.

This menu allows you to manage installed applications. You can view and control currently running services, or use the device for application development.

You can also view the amount of memory or resources used as well as the remaining memory and resources for each of the applications on your phone and clear the data, cache, or defaults.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Application manager** → **All**.

Clearing Application Cache and Data

Important! You must have downloaded applications installed to use this feature.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Application manager**.
2. Tap an application in which to clear the cache or data.
3. Tap **Force stop**, **Uninstall**, **Clear data**, **Clear cache**, or **Clear defaults**.

Uninstalling Third-party Applications

Important! You must have downloaded applications installed to use this feature.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **Downloaded** tab and select your desired application.
3. Tap **Uninstall** (from within the top area of the Application info page).
4. At the prompt, tap **OK** to uninstall the application.

5. Select a reason for uninstalling the application, then tap **OK**.

Running Services

The Running services option allows you to view and control currently running services such as Backup, Google Talk, SNS (messaging), Swype, and more.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **Running** tab to view all currently active and running applications. This tab also shows the total RAM being used by these currently active applications.
3. Tap a process and select **Stop** to end the process and stop it from running. When you stop the process the service or application will no longer run until you start the process or application again.
4. Tap **Show cached processes** to view additional cached applications.

Important! Stopping a process might have undesirable consequences on the application.

Storage Used

This option allows you to view a list (on the current tab) of current applications as sorted by size.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **All** tab to display all available applications.
3. Press  and then tap **Sort by size** to change the current list to show items based on the amount of storage they occupy.

Accounts and Synchronization

Your phone provides the ability to synchronize data from a variety of different sources or sites. These accounts can range from Google, a Corporate Microsoft Exchange Email Server, and other social sites such as Facebook, Twitter, and MySpace. Corporate and Google accounts provide the ability to synchronize Calendar events and Contacts.

For more information, refer to “*Creating a Samsung Account*” on page 20.

To activate Accounts and sync

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Account and sync**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Accounts and sync** slider  to the right to turn it on .

To deactivate Accounts and sync

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Account and sync**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Accounts and sync** slider  to the left to turn it off .

Synchronizing All Accounts

By default, all managed accounts are synchronized. You can also manually sync all current accounts.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Account and sync**.
2. Tap **Sync all**.

Synchronizing a Google Account

To add a new Google account:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap **Add account** → **Google** → **Existing**.

Note: If you do not already have a Google account, tap **Create** and follow the on-screen prompts to create your new account.

3. Tap the **Email** (@gmail.com) and **Password** fields and enter your information.
4. Tap **Sign in**. Your phone then communicates with the Google servers to confirm your information. Your existing Gmail account then appears within the **Manage accounts** area of the screen.

- Any changes or updates to your Gmail account are then automatically updated to your device.

To configure the Google management settings:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Accounts and sync**.
 2. Tap  within the Google account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
 3. Tap the parameters you wish to synchronize. A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
 4. Tap **Sync now** to synchronize those enabled parameters.
 5. Press  to return to the previous screen.
- For more information, refer to “*Synchronizing Contacts*” on page 112.

Synchronizing Your Corporate Account

By default, there are no Corporate Calendar events managed by the device. These must be manually added.

Note: Once a corporate email account is created, it is automatically added as a managed account.

Use the following procedure to configure your phone to synchronize with a corporate email account.

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Applications) → **Settings** → **Accounts and sync**.
– or –
Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Accounts and sync**.
2. Locate and tap the corporate email account.
3. Tap  within the adjacent account field to reveal the account's synchronization settings screen.
4. Place a check mark adjacent to those events you wish to manually sync.
5. Tap **Sync now** to synchronize those enabled parameters.
6. Press  to return to the previous screen.

Location Services

The Location services allows you to configure the device's location services.

Important! The more location determining functions are enabled, the more accurate the determination will be of your position.

Using Wireless Networks

Before you use applications such as Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Use wireless networks option.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Location services**.
2. Tap **Use wireless networks** allows apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to provide a better approximation of your current location.

Enabling the GPS Satellites

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Location services**.
2. Tap **Use GPS satellites** to enable the GPS satellite.

Enabling Sensor Aiding

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Location services**.
2. Tap **Use sensor aiding** to enhance your positioning and save on power by using your sensors.

Enabling the Location and Google Search

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Location services**.
2. Tap **Location and Google search** to enable the GPS satellite.

Tip: When using Google Maps you can turn on **Location and Google search**. Enabling this feature allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level. However, this also requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

Security

This menu contains features that allows you to configure the device's security parameters.

Screen Unlock Pattern Overview

To secure data and limit phone access, set the phone to require a screen unlock pattern each time you turn on the device, or every time the phone wakes up from sleep mode (when the screen automatically turns off).

The Screen lock menu allows to choose from a variety of locking features such as: **Swipe**, **Motion**, **Pattern**, **PIN**, **Password**, and **None**.

Using Swipe

This feature is the least secure locking method and only requires that a user swipe the screen to unlock the device.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** → **Swipe**.

Using a Motion to Unlock

This feature allows you to lock or unlock your device by simply tilting it and moving it either forwards or backwards.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** → **Motion** → **OK**.

To unlock a device with motion:

1. Verify the device is on and on the Lock screen.
2. In a single motion, use your thumb to touch and hold the Lock screen, then quickly tilt the device towards you.

Note: If you forget, these instructions appear at the bottom of the Lock screen.

Setting an Unlock Pattern

Creating a screen unlock pattern increases security on the phone. When you enable the User visible pattern field, you will draw an unlock pattern on the screen whenever you want to unlock the phone's buttons or touch screen. When you activate the User tactile feedback field, you feel vibration as feedback while drawing the pattern.

The feature is now paired with a backup PIN code that acts as a backup to the pattern lock. If you forget your pattern, you can regain access to the device by entering a PIN code.

Note: Make sure the Require Pattern field is activated.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock → Pattern**.
3. Review the on-screen animation procedure for drawing a pattern and tap **Next** when you are ready to draw a pattern.

4. Draw your pattern by touching your first on-screen point. Then, **without removing your finger from the screen, drag your finger over adjacent points until the gray trace line overlaps each point** and they are highlighted with a green circle.
5. When you have connected at least four dots in a vertical, horizontal or diagonal direction, lift your finger from the screen and tap **Continue**.
6. Confirm the new pattern by redrawing it and then tapping **Confirm**. The Unlock pattern is set.
7. Enter the backup PIN code and tap **Continue**.
8. Reenter the PIN to reconfirm the previous entry and tap **OK**.

Changing the Screen Lock Pattern

This feature allows you to change the previously stored unlock pattern and update it if necessary. This process is similar to changing your password from time to time.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**.
3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.
4. Tap **Pattern** and repeat steps 3 - 7 from the previous section.

Deleting the Screen Lock Pattern

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**.
3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.
4. Tap **None**.

PIN Lock and Unlock

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** → **PIN**.
3. Enter a PIN number using the numeric keypad and touch **Continue** to confirm the password.
4. Confirm the PIN by re-entering it and tap **OK** to confirm.

Your phone now requires you to enter this PIN number in order to unlock the phone.

Password Lock and Unlock

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Set up screen lock**.
3. Tap **Password**.
4. Enter a password using the keypad and tap **Continue** to confirm the password.
5. Confirm the password by re-entering it and tap **OK** to confirm.

Samsung Unlock Options

Activate or deactivates various Unlock screen functions.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security** → **Lock screen options**.
2. Tap **Lock screen options** and choose from:
 - **Shortcuts** sets shortcuts to appear at the bottom of the Lock screen.
 - **Camera quick access** provides you with quick access to the camera function from the Lock screen. When active, in a single motion,

- **Clock** allows you to display the digital clock while the Lock screen is active. Enabled by default.
- **Dual clock** displays a set of dual digital clock on the Lock screen while you are traveling. Tap the entry to set your home city. This time zone then becomes the time used by one of these on-screen clocks.
- **Weather** displays the current area weather on the Lock screen. Tap and set both the temperature units (F or C) and a refresh time.
- **Help text** shows help information on the Lock screen.
- **Wake up in lock screen** requires that you say a command to wake-up S Voice.
- **Set wake-up command** designates your S Voice wake-up commands. Tap Wake-up S Voice and follow the on-screen prompts to create a new verbal command.

Note: These options vary depending on the selected Lock settings.

Using a Visible Pattern

When the **Make pattern visible** option is enabled, the device displays the on-screen lock grid that is used for unlocking.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Locking Automatically

This option allows you to define the amount of time that must pass before the device can automatically lock on its own.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Lock Instantly with Power Key

When enabled, the screen is automatically locked after pressing the Power/Lock key.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Vibrate on Screen Tap

When enabled, you will feel vibration as feedback while drawing the pattern, using a PIN or password lock.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Owner Information

This option allows you to show user-defined information on the Lock screen.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security** → **Owner information**.
2. Tap the **Show owner info on lock screen** checkbox to create a checkmark if you want your owner information displayed.
3. Enter text that you would like displayed on your Lock screen.
4. Press  twice to save the new text and return to the previous screen.

Encrypt Device

When enabled, this feature requires a password be used to decrypt the device each time you turn it on.

Encrypt External SD Card

When enabled, this feature requires a password be used to decrypt the microSD card each time it is connected.

Setting up SIM Card Lock

Prevent another user from using your SIM card to make unauthorized calls or from accessing information stored on your SIM card by protecting the information using a PIN code.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Set up SIM card lock**.
3. Tap **Lock SIM card**, enter your SIM PIN code, then tap **OK**.

Note: You must activate Lock SIM card before you can change your SIM PIN code.

To change an existing SIM Card PIN:

1. Tap **Change SIM PIN**.
2. Enter the old SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.
3. Enter the new SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.
4. Re-type the new SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.

Password Settings

When you create a phone password you can also configure the phone to display the password as you type it instead of using an asterisk (*).

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Security**.
2. Tap **Make passwords visible** to activate this feature.

Device Administration

Activating this feature allows Google to administrate your phone in a way similar to IT security settings on a corporate PC. This would be beneficial in the case that your phone was lost or stolen. The phone could be “deactivated” or “restricted” (through administration) from a remote location.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Security**.
2. Tap **Device administrators** to begin configuring this setting.
3. Select an administrator device and follow the prompts.

Unknown Sources

Before you can download a web application you must enable the Unknown sources feature (enables downloading). Developers can use this option to install non-Play Store applications.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Security**.
2. Tap **Unknown sources** to activate this feature.

Note: If you are notified that you can not download a Play Store application because it comes from an “Unknown source”, enabling this option corrects this issue.

Credential Storage

This option allows certain applications to access secure certificates and other credentials. Certificates and credentials can be installed to the SD card and password protected.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Trusted credentials** to display only trusted CA certificates. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates secure credentials.
3. Tap **Install from device storage** to install encrypted certificates from the USB Storage location.
4. Tap **Clear credentials** to clear the device (SD card or phone memory) of all certificate contents and reset the credentials password.

Language and Input Settings

This setting allows you to configure the language in which to display the menus. You can also set on-screen keyboard options.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input**.

Language Settings

To set the language that the menus display on the device:

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** → **Language**.
2. Select a language and region from the list.

Select Input Method

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** → **Default**.
2. Select an input method.
– or –

Tap **Configure input methods** to alter/modify the available input methods.

Samsung Keyboard Settings

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** →  (adjacent to the **Samsung keyboard** field).
– or –

From within an active text entry screen, tap  from the bottom of the screen to reveal the **Samsung keyboard settings** screen.

2. Set any of the following options:
 - **Portrait keyboard types** allows you to choose a keypad configuration (Qwerty Keypad [default] or 3x4 keyboard).
 - **Input language** sets the input language. Tap a language from the available list. The keyboard is updated to the selected language.

- **Predictive text** enables predictive text entry mode. This must be enabled to gain access to the advanced settings. Touch and hold to access the advanced settings
- **T9 Trace** like using Swipe, allows you to type words by swyping between on-screen keys.
- **Handwriting** enables the device to recognize on-screen handwriting and convert it to text.
- **Voice input** activates the Voice input feature. This is an experimental feature that uses Google's networked speech recognition application.
- **Auto capitalization** automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in each sentence (standard English style).
- **Auto-punctuate** automatically inserts a full stop in a sentence by tapping the space bar twice when using the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.
- **Character preview** provides an automatic preview of the current character selection within the text string. This is helpful when multiple characters are available within one key.
- **Key-tap sound** enables auditory feedback when you tap an on-screen key.

- **Tutorial** launches a brief on-screen tutorial covering the main concepts related to the Samsung keyboard.
- **Reset settings** resets the keyboard settings back to their original configuration.

Predictive Text - Advanced Settings

The predictive text system provides next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for users pressing the wrong keys on QWERTY keyboards.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** →  (adjacent to the **Samsung keyboard** field).

— or —

From within an active text entry screen, tap  from the bottom of the screen to reveal the **Samsung keyboard settings** screen.

2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Predictive text** slider from off  to the right to turn it on .
3. Tap the **Predictive text** field and configure any of the following advanced options:

- **Word completion** tells your device to attempt to predict how to complete the word you have started. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- **Word completion point** sets how many letters should be entered before a word prediction is made. Choose from 2 letters, 3 letters, 4 letters, or 5 letters.
- **Spell correction** enables the automatic correction of typographical errors by selecting from a list of possible words that reflect both the characters of the keys you touched, and those of nearby characters. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- **Next word prediction** predicts the next word you are like to enter. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- **Auto-append** automatically adds predictions to the word you are typing. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)
- **Auto-substitution** allows the device to automatically replace misspelled or miskeyed words. This option reduce “typos.” (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.)

- **Regional correction** automatically tries to correct errors caused when you tap keys adjacent to the correct keys. (A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled).
- **Recapture** sets the device to redisplay the word suggestion list after selecting the wrong word from the list.
- **My word list** allows you to add new words to the built-in predictive text dictionary.
 - Tap  (**Add word**) and use the keyboard to enter the new word.
 - Tap **Done** to store the new word.
- **Auto substitution list** allows you to create a word rule by adding words for automatic substitution during text entry (for example you've becomes you'vee).
 - Scroll up or down to review the current list of word substitutions.
 - Tap  (**Add word**).
 - Enter the original word that will be replaced in the **Shortcut** field (for example, youve).
 - Enter the substitute word that will be used in the **Substitution** field (for example, you?fve).
 - Tap **Done** to save the substitution rule.

4. Press  to return to the previous screen.

Configure Google Voice Typing

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input**.

— or —

From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen, then select  (**Select input method**) → **Configure input methods**.

2. Tap  (adjacent to the **Google voice typing** field).
3. Select a language by tapping **Select input languages** area.
4. Remove the check mark from the **Automatic** field. This allows you to select additional languages.
5. Select the desired languages.
6. Activate **Block offensive words** to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).

Configuring Voice Input Controls

This feature allows you to use pre-defined voice commands to control various features on your device. Actions include: Incoming calls, Alarm, Camera, and Music.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Voice cmd for apps** slider  to the right to turn it on .
3. Read the Voice input control disclaimer about restricting volume for event alerts and tap **OK**.
4. Tap the **Voice cmd for apps** field. Enabling an option in this menu activates its voice control functionality.
5. Tap **Incoming calls** to activate a voice control for answering or rejecting an incoming call.
 - **Answer** an incoming call by clearly saying “Answer”.
 - **Reject** an incoming call by clearly saying “Reject”.
6. Tap **Alarm** to activate a voice control for stopping or snoozing an active alarm event.
 - **Stop** an alarm for continuing to sound by clearly saying “Stop”.

- **Snooze** an alarm until the next reminder interval by clearly saying “Snooze”.

7. Tap **Camera** to activate a voice control that allows you to verbally take a new picture.
 - **Take a new photo** by clearly saying either “Capture”, “Shoot”, “Smile”, or “Cheese”.
8. Tap **Music** to activate a voice control that allows you to verbally control music playback within the Music Player app (page 197). Commands include: **Next**, **Previous**, **Play**, **Pause**, **Volume up**, and **Volume down**.

Note: Voice control for music is only available when using the Music player application. This control is not available on Play Music.

Speech Settings

This menu allows you to set the speech settings for Voice input.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input**.
2. Tap **Voice recognizer** and select either **Google** or **Samsung powered by Vlingo** as your Voice recognition engine.
3. Tap **Voice search** to configure:

Configuring Voice Input Recognition

This feature allows the device to correctly recognize verbal input.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** → **Voice search**.
2. Configure the available options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
 - **Language:** selects an input language and associated dialect recognition (if available).
 - **SafeSearch:** sets the explicit image filter settings. These settings apply to only Google voice search results. Choose from: **Off**, **Moderate**, or **Strict**.

- **Block offensive words:** allows you to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).

3. Press  to return to the previous screen.

Configuring Text-to-speech

This feature allows the device to provide a verbal readout of on-screen data such as messages and incoming caller information. This action is called TTS (Text To Speech).

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** → **Text-to-speech output**.
2. Select a current Preferred TTS engine from the list of available options. The default is Google Text-to-speech.
3. Tap  to configure the engine's settings.
4. Configure the General options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
 - **Speech rate:** adjusts the rate at which on-screen text is spoken by the device. Choose from: **Very slow**, **Slow**, **Normal**, **Fast**, and **Very fast**.
 - **Listen to an example:** plays a short example of what the text-to-speech feature sounds like on your device when activated.

- **Driving mode:** incoming calls and new notifications are automatically ready out loud. In a single motion touch and slide  to the right to turn it on.
 - Once active, tap the Driving mode field to reveal the associated settings.
 - Select those applications that will use TTS while driving mode is activated. Choose from: Incoming call, Message, New emails, New voicemail, Alarm, Schedule, or Unlock screen.

Configuring the Mouse-TrackPad

This feature allows you to configure the pointer speed for the mouse/trackpad.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Language and input** → **Pointer speed**.
2. Adjust the slider and tap **OK**.

Back up and Reset

Location settings, backup configurations, or reset the phone to erase all personal data.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Backup and reset**.

Mobile Backup and Restore

The device can be configured to back up your current settings, application data and settings.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Backup and reset**.
2. Tap **Back up my data** to create a backup of your current phone settings and applications.
3. Tap **Backup account** to assign the account being backed up.
4. Tap **Automatic restore** to assist in the re-installation of a previously installed application (including preferences and data).
5. Tap **Factory data reset** to reset your device and sound settings to the factory default settings. For more information, refer to “*Factory Data Reset*” on page 278.
6. Tap **Collect diagnostics** to collect diagnostic data for troubleshooting use. For more information, refer to “*Collect Diagnostics*” on page 278.

Prior to doing a Factory Reset

Before initiating a factory reset, it is recommended that you backup your personal data prior to use.

To export a Contact list to your microSD card:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Contacts**).
2. Press  and then tap **Import/Export**.
3. Tap **Export to SD card** → **OK**. For more information, refer to “Export/Import” on page 115.

Verify your images and videos are on your microSD card:

1. From the Home screen, tap  (**Applications**) →  (**Gallery**).
2. Verify the Gallery contains all of your pictures and videos.
3. Remove both the back cover and remove the internal microSD card prior to initiating the process.

Factory Data Reset

From this menu you can reset your device and sound settings to the factory default settings.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Backup and reset** → **Factory data reset**.
2. Read the on-screen reset information.
3. Tap **Reset device**.
4. If necessary, enter your password and tap **Delete all**.
The device resets to the factory default settings automatically and when finished displays the Home screen.

Collect Diagnostics

This feature only collects diagnostic data for troubleshooting use.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Backup and reset** → **Collect diagnostics**.
2. Read the on-screen System Manager Application information.

Note: This software collects only diagnostic data from your device so that T-Mobile technicians can better troubleshoot issues with your device.

3. Choose to enable or disable the feature by placing a check mark in the **Allow Diagnostics** field.
4. Select either **More Info..** (to read additional information) or **Close** to close the message screen.

Important! Selecting **Close** only closes the current description screen and does not disable data collection. To disable data collection, go to **Settings → Backup and reset → Collect diagnostics** and turn off the **Allow Diagnostics** feature.

Accessory

This menu allows you to assign external speakers when the device is docked.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Accessory**.
2. Tap **Audio output** to use the external dock speakers when the phone is docked.
3. Tap **Audio applications** to enable the audio applications within the quick panel after connecting earphones.

Date and Time

This menu allows you to change the current time and date displayed.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → Date and time**.
2. Tap **Automatic date and time** to allow the network set the date and time.

Important! Deactivate **Automatic date and time** to manually set the rest of the options.

3. Tap **Automatic time zone** to allow the network set the time zone information automatically.
4. Tap **Set date** and use the plus or minus icons to set the **Month**, **Day**, and **Year** then tap **Set**.
5. Tap **Set time** and use the plus or minus icons, set **Hour**, and **Minute**. Tap **PM** or **AM**, then tap **Set**.
6. Tap **Select time zone**, then tap a time zone.
7. Tap **Use 24-hour format**. If this is not selected the device automatically uses a 12-hour format.
8. Tap **Select date format** and select the date format type.

Accessibility Settings

This service lets you enable and disable downloaded accessibility applications that aid in navigating your Android device, such as TalkBack (uses synthesized speech to describe the results of actions), KickBack (provides haptic feedback for actions), and SoundBack (plays sounds for various actions). Also lets you enable use of the power key to end calls.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Accessibility**.

Note: Initially, it might be necessary to download accessibility applications from the Play Store.

2. Select the **Auto-rotate screen** field to activate this feature which automatically rotates an available screen.
3. Select the **Speak passwords** field to activate this feature which reads out password information.
4. Select the **The power key ends calls** field to activate this feature which uses the  to end any current calls without turning off the screen.

5. Tap **Accessibility shortcut** to allow the accessibility shortcut under the device options to be used by pressing and holding the power key.
6. Tap **Screen timeout** to timeout the accessibility feature after a defined amount of time.
7. Tap **Lock automatically** to lock the screen automatically in 5 seconds after it is turned off.
8. Tap **TalkBack** to activate the feature.

Note: TalkBack, when installed and enabled, speaks feedback to help blind and low-vision users.

Important! TalkBack can collect all of the text you enter, except passwords, including personal data and credit card numbers. It may also log your user interface interactions with the device.

9. Tap the **Install Web scripts → Allow** to activate/deactivate the feature which allows some applications to install scripts from Google that makes the Web site's content more accessible.

10. Tap the **Negative colors** field to reverse the display of on-screen colors from White text on a Black background to Black text on a White background.
11. Tap the **Font Size** field to change the size of the fonts used on the device within menus, options, etc..
Choose from: Tiny, Small, Normal, Large, or Huge.
12. Tap the **Mono audio** field to enable stereo audio to be compressed into a single mono audio stream for use with a single earbud/earphone.
13. Tap the **Turn off all sounds** field to mute every sound made by the device during taps, selections, notifications, etc..
14. Tap the **Tap and hold delay** field to select a time interval for this action. Choose from: Short, Medium, or Long.

Developer Options

Use the Developer options to set options for application development.

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Developer options**.

Important! These features are used for development purposes only.

USB Debugging

When enabled, allows debugging when the device is attached to a PC by a USB cable.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Developer options**.
2. Tap **USB debugging** to enable or disable the setting.
When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Development device ID

The identification number for your device when using it as a development tool displays in this field.

Allowing Mock Locations

Note: This feature is used for development purposes only.

If you are a developer who is testing a GPS applications using this device, you can tell the device that the phone is at different GPS locations. In other words, the phone is allowed to “mock” the coordinates.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Developer options**.
2. Tap **Allow mock locations** to enable or disable the setting. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Desktop Backup Password

Protect the desktop with a backup password ID.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Developer options**.
2. Tap **Desktop backup password**.
3. In the Settings screen, enter the current full backup password, the new password for full backups, then enter the new password again.

4. Tap **Set backup password** to save the password change.

User Interface Options

Configure the user interface by setting the behavior for the way the screen behaves when using applications or displaying data.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Developer options**.
2. Tap the check box next to each option to enable:
 - **Strict mode**: Makes the screen flash when applications perform long operations on the main thread.
 - **Show pointer location**: Highlights the data that was touched on the screen.
 - **Show touches**: Displays touch interactions on the screen.
 - **Show screen updates**: Areas of the screen flash when they update.
 - **Show CPU usage**: Screen highlights the current CPU usage.
 - **Force GPU rendering**: Uses a 2D acceleration in applications.
 - **Window animation scale**: Configure the scale for animation (ranges from off to 10x).

- **Transition animation scale**: Configure the scale for transitioning when using animation (ranges from off to 10x).

Application Options

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings** → **Developer options**.
2. Tap **Do not keep activities** to destroy every activity as soon as the application is closed.
3. Tap **Limit background processes** to set the number of processes that can run in the background. Options are: Standard limit, No background processes, and 1 to 4 processes at most.
4. Tap **Show all ANRs** to display a prompt when applications running in the background are not responding.

Google Search Settings

Use Google Search to search the Web.

1. Press  →  and then tap  (**Search**).
2. Press  → **Settings**.
3. Tap any of the following search parameters to then alter the settings:
 - **Google Search** opens a screen where you can set your Google search preferences.
 - **Google Account:** provides a list of current Google account configured on the device.
 - **Use Web History:** includes search matches from Google's online search engine.
 - **Clear on-device search history:** erases the history for recently selected search results.
 - **Use My Location:** uses your My Location information for Google search results and services.
 - **Search on google.com:** uses your local domain (www.google.com) for searching.
 - **Terms of Service:** displays the applications' service terms.
 - **Open Source Licenses:** displays the applications' open source license information.

About Device

This menu contains legal information, system tutorial information, and other phone information such as the model number, firmware version, baseband version, kernel version, and software build number.

To access phone information:

- Press  →  and then tap **Settings → About device**. The following information displays:
 - **Software update:** allows you to connect to the network and upload any new phone software directly to your device. The device automatically updates with the latest available software when you access this option.
 - **Status:** displays the battery status, the level of the battery (percentage), the network connection, signal strength, mobile network type, service state, roaming status, mobile network state, My phone number, ERI version, IMEI number, IMEI SV, IP address, Wi-Fi MAC address, Bluetooth address, Serial number, Up time, and Device status.

- **Legal information:** This option displays information about Open source licenses, License settings, as well as Google legal information. This information clearly provides copyright and distribution legal information and facts as well as Google Terms of Service, Terms of Service for Android-powered Phones, and much more pertinent information as a reference. Read the information and terms, then press BACK to return to the Settings menu.

Tip: To find your device's DivX® registration code and information about registering your device to play DivX protected video, tap **License settings → DivX® VOD**.

- **Model number:** displays the device's model number.
- **Android version:** displays the firmware version loaded on this device.
- **Baseband version:** displays the baseband version loaded on this device.
- **Kernel version:** displays the kernel version loaded on this device.
- **Build number:** displays the software, build number.

Note: Firmware, baseband, kernel and build numbers are usually used for updates to the handset or support. For additional information please contact your T-Mobile service representative.

Software Update

The Software Update feature enables you to use your device to connect to the network and upload any new software directly to your device. The device automatically updates with the latest available software when you access this option.

Note: If  appears in the Status Bar area, tap it to be taken to the Software updated screen.

1. Press  →  and then tap **Settings → About device → Software update**.
2. Read the Software update information screen.
3. Select an available option:

Note: You configure the device's software update parameters.

- **OK:** Tap this option to connect to the remote server, detect if there is an available update, then begin the download over your existing data connection.
 - Software updates can include bug fixes, enhancements to services, to the device or currently installed software.
- **Wi-Fi settings:** Enable this option to only download available updates via an active Wi-Fi connection. If disabled, the device will begin available downloads via its' T-Mobile connection.
- **Cancel:** Tap this option to cancel the operation.

Section 12: Health and Safety Information

This section outlines the safety precautions associated with using your phone. The terms “mobile device” or “cell phone” are used in this section to refer to your phone. **Read this information before using your mobile device.**

Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has published information for consumers relating to Radio Frequency (RF) exposure from wireless phones. The FDA publication includes the following information:

Do cell phones pose a health hazard?

Many people are concerned that cell phone radiation will cause cancer or other serious health hazards. The weight of scientific evidence has not linked cell phones with any health problems.

Cell phones emit low levels of Radio Frequency (RF) energy. Over the past 15 years, scientists have conducted hundreds of studies looking at the biological effects of the radio frequency energy emitted by cell phones. While some researchers have reported biological changes associated

with RF energy, these studies have failed to be replicated. The majority of studies published have failed to show an association between exposure to radio frequency from a cell phone and health problems.

The low levels of RF cell phones emit while in use are in the microwave frequency range. They also emit RF at substantially reduced time intervals when in the stand-by mode. Whereas high levels of RF can produce health effects (by heating tissue), exposure to low level RF that does not produce heating effects causes no known adverse health effects.

The biological effects of radio frequency energy should not be confused with the effects from other types of electromagnetic energy.

Very high levels of electromagnetic energy, such as is found in X-rays and gamma rays, can ionize biological tissues. Ionization is a process where electrons are stripped away from their normal locations in atoms and molecules. It can permanently damage biological tissues including DNA, the genetic material.

The energy levels associated with radio frequency energy, including both radio waves and microwaves, are not great enough to cause ionization of atoms and molecules. Therefore, RF energy is a type of non-ionizing radiation. Other types of non-ionizing radiation include visible light, infrared radiation (heat), and other forms of electromagnetic radiation with relatively low frequencies.

While RF energy does not ionize particles, large amounts can increase body temperatures and cause tissue damage. Two areas of the body, the eyes and the testes, are particularly vulnerable to RF heating because there is relatively little blood flow in them to carry away excess heat.

Research Results to Date: Is there a connection between RF and certain health problems?

The results of most studies conducted to date say no. In addition, attempts to replicate and confirm the few studies that have shown a connection have failed.

The scientific community at large therefore believes that the weight of scientific evidence does not show an association between exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) from cell phones and adverse health outcomes. Still the scientific community has supported additional research to address gaps in knowledge. Some of these studies are described below.

Interphone Study

Interphone is a large international study designed to determine whether cell phones increase the risk of head and neck cancer. A report published in the International Journal of Epidemiology (June, 2010) compared cell phone usage for more than 5,000 people with brain tumors (glioma and meningioma) and a similar number of healthy controls.

Results of this study did NOT show that cell phones caused brain cancer. In this study, most people had no increased risk of brain cancer from using cell phones. For people with the heaviest use of cell phones (an average of more than ½ hour per day, every day, for over 10 years) the study suggested a slight increase in brain cancer. However, the authors determined that biases and errors prevented any conclusions being drawn from this data. Additional information about Interphone can be found at http://www.iarc.fr/en/media-centre/pr/2010/pdfs/pr200_E.pdf.

Interphone is the largest cell phone study to date, but it did not answer all questions about cell phone safety. Additional research is being conducted around the world, and the FDA continues to monitor developments in this field.

International Cohort Study on Mobile Phone Users (COSMOS)

The COSMOS study aims to conduct long-term health monitoring of a large group of people to determine if there are any health issues linked to long-term exposure to radio frequency energy from cell phone use. The COSMOS study will follow approximately 300,000 adult cell phone users in Europe for 20 to 30 years. Additional information about the COSMOS study can be found at

<http://www.ukcosmos.org/index.html>.

Risk of Brain Cancer from Exposure to Radio Frequency Fields in Childhood and Adolescence (MOBI-KIDS)

MOBI-KIDS is an international study investigating the relationship between exposure to radio frequency energy from communication technologies including cell phones and brain cancer in young people. This is an international multi-center study involving 14 European and non-European countries. Additional information about MOBI-KIDS can be found at

http://www.creal.cat/programes-recerca/en_projectes-creal/view.php?ID=39.

Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute

The National Cancer Institute (NCI) actively follows cancer statistics in the United States to detect any change in rates of new cases for brain cancer. If cell phones play a role in risk for brain cancer, rates should go up, because heavy cell phone use has been common for quite some time in the U.S. Between 1987 and 2005, the overall age-adjusted incidence of brain cancer did not increase. Additional information about SEER can be found at

<http://seer.cancer.gov/>.

Cell Phone Industry Actions

Although the existing scientific data do not justify FDA regulatory actions, the FDA has urged the cell phone industry to take a number of steps, including the following:

- Support-needed research on possible biological effects of RF for the type of signal emitted by cell phones;
- Design cell phones in a way that minimizes any RF exposure to the user; and
- Cooperate in providing users of cell phones with the current information on cell phone use and human health concerns.

The FDA also is working with voluntary standard-setting bodies such as the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), and others to assure that safety standards continue to adequately protect the public.

Reducing Exposure: Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories

Steps to Reduce Exposure to Radio Frequency Energy

If there is a risk from being exposed to radio frequency energy (RF) from cell phones - and at this point we do not know that there is - it is probably very small. But, if you are concerned about avoiding even potential risks, you can take a few simple steps to minimize your RF exposure.

- Reduce the amount of time spent using your cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between your head and the cell phone.

Hands-Free Kits

Hands-free kits may include audio or Bluetooth® headsets and various types of body-worn accessories such as belt-clips and holsters. Combinations of these can be used to reduce RF energy absorption from cell phones.

Headsets can substantially reduce exposure because the phone is held away from the head in the user's hand or in approved body-worn accessories. Cell phones marketed in the U.S. are required to meet RF exposure compliance requirements when used against the head and against the body.

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that hands-free kits reduce risks. Hands-free kits can be used for convenience and comfort. They are also required by law in many states if you want to use your phone while driving.

Cell Phone Accessories that Claim to Shield the Head from RF Radiation

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that accessories which claim to shield the head from those emissions reduce risks. Some products that claim to shield the user from RF absorption use special phone cases, while others involve nothing more than a metallic accessory attached to the phone.

Studies have shown that these products generally do not work as advertised. Unlike “hands-free” kits, these so-called “shields” may interfere with proper operation of the phone. The phone may be forced to boost its power to compensate, leading to an increase in RF absorption.

Children and Cell Phones

The scientific evidence does not show a danger to any users of cell phones from RF exposure, including children and teenagers. The steps adults can take to reduce RF exposure apply to children and teenagers as well.

- Reduce the amount of time spent on the cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between the head and the cell phone.

Some groups sponsored by other national governments have advised that children be discouraged from using cell phones at all. For example, The Stewart Report from the United Kingdom made such a recommendation in December 2000. In this report, a group of independent experts noted that no evidence exists that using a cell phone causes brain tumors or other ill effects. Their recommendation to limit cell phone use by children was strictly precautionary; it was not based on scientific evidence that any health hazard exists.

Additional information on the safety of RF exposures from various sources can be obtained from the following organizations (updated 10/1/2010):

- FCC RF Safety Program:
<http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/>.
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):
<http://www.epa.gov/radtown/wireless-tech.html>.
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
<http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/radiofrequencyradiation/>.
(Note: This web address is case sensitive.)
- National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH):
<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/>.
- World Health Organization (WHO):
<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/en/>.
- International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection:
<http://www.icnirp.de>.
- Health Protection Agency:
<http://www.hpa.org.uk/Topics/Radiation/>.

- US Food and Drug Administration:

[http://www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/
RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/
HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm](http://www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm).

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information

Your wireless phone is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the exposure limits for Radio Frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) of the U.S. Government.

These FCC RF exposure limits are derived from the recommendations of two expert organizations: the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement (NCRP) and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). In both cases, the recommendations were developed by scientific and engineering experts drawn from industry, government, and academia after extensive reviews of the scientific literature related to the biological effects of RF energy.

The RF exposure limit set by the FCC for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR is a measure of the rate of absorption of RF energy by the human body

expressed in units of watts per kilogram (W/kg). The FCC requires wireless phones to comply with a safety limit of 1.6 watts per kilogram (1.6 W/kg).

The FCC SAR limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection to the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

SAR tests are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum reported value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output of the phone.

Before a new model phone is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the SAR limit established by the FCC. Tests for each model phone are performed in positions and locations (e.g. at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC. For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets

FCC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the mobile device a minimum of 1.0 cm from the body.

Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with FCC RF exposure guidelines. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this mobile phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. The maximum SAR values for this model phone as reported to the FCC is:

- Head: 0.47 W/kg.
- Body-worn: 1.05 W/kg.

SAR information on this and other model phones can be accessed online on the FCC's website through <http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/sar.html>. To find information that pertains to a particular model phone, this site uses the phone FCC ID number which is usually printed somewhere on the case of the phone. Sometimes it may be necessary to remove the battery pack to find the number. Once you have the FCC ID number for a particular phone, follow the instructions on the website and it should provide values for typical or maximum SAR for a particular phone. Additional

SAR information can also be obtained at <http://www.fcc.gov/encyclopedia/specific-absorption-rate-sar-cellular-telephones>.

FCC Part 15 Information to User

Pursuant to part 15.21 of the FCC Rules, you are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by Samsung could void your authority to operate the device.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception,

which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS)

This device is designed to receive wireless emergency alerts from the Commercial Mobile Alerting System ("CMAS"; which may also be known as the Personal Localized Alerting Network ("PLAN")). If your wireless provider has chosen to participate in CMAS/PLAN, alerts are available while in the provider's coverage area. If you travel outside your provider's coverage area, wireless emergency alerts may not be available. For more information, please contact your wireless provider.

Smart Practices While Driving

On the Road - Off the Phone

The primary responsibility of every driver is the safe operation of his or her vehicle.

Responsible drivers understand that no secondary task should be performed while driving whether it be eating, drinking, talking to passengers, or talking on a mobile phone - unless the driver has assessed the driving conditions and is confident that the secondary task will not interfere with their primary responsibility. **Do not engage in any activity while driving a moving vehicle which may cause you to take your eyes off the road or become so absorbed in the activity that your ability to concentrate on the act of driving becomes impaired.** Samsung is committed to promoting responsible driving and giving drivers the tools they need to understand and address distractions.

Check the laws and regulations on the use of mobile devices and their accessories in the areas where you drive. Always obey them. The use of these devices may be prohibited or restricted in certain areas. For example, only hands-free use may be permitted in certain areas.

Before answering calls, consider your circumstances. Let the call go to voicemail when driving conditions require.

Remember, driving comes first, not the call!

If you consider a call necessary and appropriate, follow these tips:

- Use a hands-free device;
- Secure your phone within easy reach;
- Place calls when you are not moving;
- Plan calls when your car will be stationary;
- Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations;
- Let the person with whom you are speaking know that you are driving and will suspend the call if necessary;
- Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving;

Notice regarding legal restrictions on mounting this device in an automobile:

Laws in some states may prohibit mounting this device on or near the windshield of an automobile. In other states, the law may permit mounting this device only in specific locations in the automobile. Be sure to consult the state and local laws or ordinances where you drive before mounting this device in an automobile. Failure to comply with these restrictions could result in fines, penalties, or other damages.

Never mount this device in a manner that will obstruct the driver's clear view of the street and traffic.

Never use wireless data services such as text messaging, Web browsing, or e-mail while operating a vehicle.

Never watch videos, such as a movie or clip, or play video games while operating a vehicle.

For more information, go to <http://www.ctia.org>.

Battery Use and Safety

Important! Handle and store batteries properly to avoid injury or damage. Most battery issues arise from improper handling of batteries and, particularly, from the continued use of damaged batteries.

- **Do not disassemble, crush, puncture, shred, or otherwise attempt to change the form of your battery.** Do not put a high degree of pressure on the battery. This can cause leakage or an internal short-circuit, resulting in overheating.

- **Do not let the phone or battery come in contact with liquids.** Liquids can get into the phone's circuits, leading to corrosion. Even when the phone appears to be dry and appears to operate normally, the circuitry could slowly corrode and pose a safety hazard. If the phone and/or battery get wet, have them checked by your service provider or contact Samsung, even if they appear to be working properly.
- **Do not place your battery in or near a heat source.** Excessive heating can damage the phone or the battery and could cause the phone or the battery to explode. Do not dry a wet or damp battery with an appliance or heat source such as a microwave oven, hair dryer, iron, or radiator. Avoid leaving your phone in your car in high temperatures.
- **Do not dispose of the phone or the battery in a fire.** The phone or the battery may explode when overheated.
- **Do not handle a damaged or leaking battery.** Do not let leaking battery fluid come in contact with your eyes, skin or clothing. For safe disposal options, contact your nearest Samsung-authorized service center.
- **Avoid dropping the cell phone.** Dropping the phone or the battery, especially on a hard surface, can potentially cause damage to the phone and battery. If you suspect damage to the phone or battery, take it to a service center for inspection.
- **Never use any charger or battery that is damaged in any way.**
- **Do not allow the battery to touch metal objects.** Accidental short-circuiting can occur when a metallic object (coin, key, jewelry, clip, or pen) causes a direct connection between the + and - terminals of the battery (metal strips on the battery), for example when you carry a spare battery in a pocket or bag. Short-circuiting the terminals may damage the battery or the object causing the short-circuiting.

Important! Use only Samsung-approved batteries, and recharge your battery only with Samsung-approved chargers which are specifically designed for your phone.

WARNING!

Use of a non-Samsung-approved battery or charger may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard. Samsung's warranty does not cover damage to the phone caused by non-Samsung-approved batteries and/or chargers.

- **Do not use incompatible cell phone batteries and chargers.**

Some websites and second-hand dealers not associated with reputable manufacturers and carriers, might be selling incompatible or even counterfeit batteries and chargers.

Consumers should purchase manufacturer or carrier-recommended products and accessories. If unsure about whether a replacement battery or charger is compatible, contact the manufacturer of the battery or charger.

- **Misuse or use of incompatible phones, batteries, and charging devices could result in damage to the equipment and a possible risk of fire, explosion, or leakage, leading to serious injuries, damages to your phone, or other serious hazard.**

Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling

Samsung cares for the environment and encourages its customers to recycle Samsung mobile devices and genuine Samsung accessories.

Proper disposal of your mobile device and its battery is not only important for safety, it benefits the environment. Batteries must be recycled or disposed of properly.

Recycling programs for your mobile device, batteries, and accessories may not be available in your area.

We've made it easy for you to recycle your old Samsung mobile device by working with respected take-back companies in every state in the country.

Drop It Off

You can drop off your Samsung-branded mobile device and batteries for recycling at one of our numerous Samsung Recycling Direct (SM) locations. A list of these locations may be found at:

http://pages.samsung.com/us/recyclingdirect/usactivities_environment_samsungrecyclingdirect_locations.jsp

Samsung-branded devices and batteries will be accepted at these locations for no fee.

Consumers may also recycle their used mobile device or batteries at many retail or carrier-provided locations where mobile devices and batteries are sold. Additional information regarding specific locations may be found at: <http://www.epa.gov/epawaste/partnerships/plugin/cellphone/index.htm> or at <http://www.call2recycle.org/>.

Mail It In

The Samsung Mobile Take-Back Program will provide Samsung customers with a free recycling mailing label. Just go to http://www.samsung.com/us/aboutsamsung/citizenship/usactivities_environment_samsungrecyclingdirect.html?INT=STA_recycle_your_phone_page and follow the instructions to print out a free pre-paid postage label and then send your old mobile device or battery to the address listed, via U.S. Mail, for recycling.

Dispose of unwanted electronics through an approved recycler.

To find the nearest recycling location, go to our website: www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect
Or call, (877) 278-0799.

Follow local regulations regarding disposal of mobile devices and batteries

Dispose of your mobile device and batteries in accordance with local regulations. In some areas, the disposal of these items in household or business trash may be prohibited. Help us protect the environment - recycle!

Warning! Never dispose of batteries in a fire because they may explode.

UL Certified Travel Charger

The Travel Charger for this phone has met applicable UL safety requirements. Please adhere to the following safety instructions per UL guidelines:

FAILURE TO FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS OUTLINED MAY LEAD TO SERIOUS PERSONAL INJURY AND POSSIBLE PROPERTY DAMAGE.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS - SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

DANGER - TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, CAREFULLY FOLLOW THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

FOR CONNECTION TO A SUPPLY NOT IN NORTH AMERICA, USE AN ATTACHMENT PLUG ADAPTOR OF THE PROPER CONFIGURATION FOR THE POWER OUTLET.

THIS POWER UNIT IS INTENDED TO BE CORRECTLY ORIENTED IN A VERTICAL OR HORIZONTAL OR FLOOR MOUNT POSITION.

Display / Touch-Screen

Please note the following information when using your mobile device:

WARNING REGARDING DISPLAY

The display on your mobile device is made of glass or acrylic and could break if your mobile device is dropped or if it receives significant impact. Do not use if screen is broken or cracked as this could cause injury to you.

WARRANTY DISCLAIMER: PROPER USE OF A TOUCH-SCREEN MOBILE DEVICE

If your mobile device has a touch-screen display, please note that a touch-screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch-screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, please refer to the “Standard Limited Warranty”.

GPS & AGPS

Certain Samsung mobile devices can use a Global Positioning System (GPS) signal for location-based applications. A GPS uses satellites controlled by the U.S. Government that are subject to changes implemented in accordance with the Department of Defense policy and the 2008 Federal Radio navigation Plan (FRP). Changes may affect the performance of location-based technology on your mobile device.

Certain Samsung mobile devices can also use an Assisted Global Positioning System (AGPS), which obtains information from the cellular network to improve GPS performance. AGPS uses your wireless service provider's network and therefore

airtime, data charges, and/or additional charges may apply in accordance with your service plan. Contact your wireless service provider for details.

Your Location

Location-based information includes information that can be used to determine the approximate location of a mobile device. Mobile devices which are connected to a wireless network transmit location-based information. Additionally, if you use applications that require location-based information (e.g. driving directions), such applications transmit location-based information. The location-based information may be shared with third-parties, including your wireless service provider, applications providers, Samsung, and other third-parties providing services.

Use of AGPS in Emergency Calls

When you make an emergency call, the cellular network may activate AGPS technology in your mobile device to tell the emergency responders your approximate location.

AGPS has limitations and **might not work in your area**.

Therefore:

- Always tell the emergency responder your location to the best of your ability; and

- Remain on the mobile device for as long as the emergency responder instructs you.

Navigation

Maps, directions, and other navigation-data, including data relating to your current location, may contain inaccurate or incomplete data, and circumstances can and do change over time. In some areas, complete information may not be available. **Therefore, you should always visually confirm that the navigational instructions are consistent with what you see before following them. All users should pay attention to road conditions, closures, traffic, and all other factors that may impact safe driving or walking. Always obey posted road signs.**

Emergency Calls

This mobile device, like any wireless mobile device, operates using radio signals, wireless and landline networks, as well as user-programmed functions, which cannot guarantee connection in all conditions, areas, or circumstances.

Therefore, you should never rely solely on any wireless mobile device for essential communications (medical emergencies, for example). Before traveling in remote or underdeveloped areas, plan an alternate method of contacting emergency services personnel. Remember, to

make or receive any calls, the mobile device must be switched on and in a service area with adequate signal strength.

Emergency calls may not be possible on all wireless mobile device networks or when certain network services and/or mobile device features are in use. Check with local service providers.

To make an emergency call:

1. If the mobile device is not on, switch it on.
2. From the Home screen, tap .
3. Key in the emergency number for your present location (for example, 911 or other official emergency number).
Emergency numbers vary by location.
4. Tap .

If certain features are in use (call blocking, for example), you may first need to deactivate those features before you can make an emergency call. Consult your User Manual and your local cellular service provider. When making an emergency call, remember to give all the necessary information as accurately as possible. Remember that your mobile device

may be the only means of communication at the scene of an accident; do not cut off the call until given permission to do so.

Care and Maintenance

Your mobile device is a product of superior design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you fulfill any warranty obligations and allow you to enjoy this product for many years:

Keep your Samsung Mobile Device away from:

Liquids of any kind

Keep the mobile device dry. Precipitation, humidity, and liquids contain minerals that will corrode electronic circuits. If the mobile device does get wet, do not accelerate drying with the use of an oven, microwave, or dryer, because this may damage the mobile device and could cause a fire or explosion.

Do not use the mobile device with a wet hand. Doing so may cause an electric shock to you or damage to the mobile device.

Extreme heat or cold

Avoid temperatures below 0°C / 32°F or above 45°C / 113°F.

Microwaves

Do not try to dry your mobile device in a microwave oven. Doing so may cause a fire or explosion.

Dust and dirt

Do not expose your mobile device to dust, dirt, or sand.

Cleaning solutions

Do not use harsh chemicals, cleaning solvents, or strong detergents to clean the mobile device. Wipe it with a soft cloth slightly dampened in a mild soap-and-water solution.

Shock or vibration

Do not drop, knock, or shake the mobile device. Rough handling can break internal circuit boards.

Paint

Do not paint the mobile device. Paint can clog the device's moving parts or ventilation openings and prevent proper operation.

Responsible Listening

Caution! Avoid potential hearing loss.

Damage to hearing occurs when a person is exposed to loud sounds over time. The risk of hearing loss increases as sound is played louder and for longer durations. Prolonged exposure to loud sounds (including music) is the most common cause of preventable hearing loss. Some scientific research suggests that using portable audio devices, such as portable music players and cell phones, at high volume settings for long durations may lead to permanent noise-induced hearing loss.

This includes the use of headphones (including headsets, earbuds, and Bluetooth® or other wireless devices). Exposure to very loud sound has also been associated in some studies with tinnitus (a ringing in the ear), hypersensitivity to sound, and distorted hearing. Individual susceptibility to noise-induced hearing loss and potential hearing problem varies. Additionally, the amount of sound produced by a portable audio device varies depending on the nature of the sound, the device settings, and the headphones

that are used. As a result, there is no single volume setting that is appropriate for everyone or for every combination of sound, settings, and equipment.

You should follow some common sense recommendations when using any portable audio device:

- Always turn the volume down before plugging the earphones into an audio source.
- Set the volume in a quiet environment and select the lowest volume at which you can hear adequately.
- Be aware that you can adapt to higher volume settings over time, not realizing that the higher volume may be harmful to your hearing.
- When using headphones, turn the volume down if you cannot hear the people speaking near you or if the person sitting next to you can hear what you are listening to.
- Do not turn the volume up to block out noisy surroundings. If you choose to listen to your portable device in a noisy environment, use noise-cancelling headphones to block out background environmental noise. By blocking background environment noise, noise cancelling headphones should allow you to hear the music at lower volumes than when using earbuds.

- Limit the amount of time you listen. As the volume increases, less time is required before your hearing could be affected.
- Avoid using headphones after exposure to extremely loud noises, such as rock concerts, that might cause temporary hearing loss. Temporary hearing loss might cause unsafe volumes to sound normal.
- Do not listen at any volume that causes you discomfort. If you experience ringing in your ears, hear muffled speech, or experience any temporary hearing difficulty after listening to your portable audio device, discontinue use and consult your doctor.

You can obtain additional information on this subject from the following sources:

American Academy of Audiology

11730 Plaza American Drive, Suite 300
Reston, VA 20190

Voice: (800) 222-2336

Email: info@audiology.org

Internet:

<http://www.audiology.org/Pages/default.aspx>

**National Institute on Deafness and Other
Communication Disorders**

National Institutes of Health
31 Center Drive, MSC 2320
Bethesda, MD 20892-2320
Email: nidcdinfo@nih.gov

Internet:
<http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/>

**National Institute for Occupational Safety
and Health (NIOSH)**

395 E Street, S.W., Suite 9200
Patriots Plaza Building
Washington, DC 20201
Voice: 1-800-35-NIOSH
(1-800-356-4674)
1-800-CDC-INFO (1-800-232-4636)
Outside the U.S. 513-533-8328

Email: cdcinfo@cdc.gov

Internet:
[http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/noise/
default.html](http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/noise/default.html)

1-888-232-6348 TTY

Operating Environment

Remember to follow any special regulations in force in any area, and always switch your mobile device off whenever it is forbidden to use it, or when it may cause interference or danger. When connecting the mobile device or any accessory to another device, read its user's guide for detailed safety instructions. Do not connect incompatible products.

Using Your Mobile Device Near Other Electronic Devices

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from Radio Frequency (RF) signals. However, certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your wireless mobile device. Consult the manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

Implantable Medical Devices

A minimum separation of six (6) inches should be maintained between a handheld wireless mobile device and an implantable medical device, such as a pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, to avoid potential interference with the device.

Persons who have such devices:

- Should ALWAYS keep the mobile device more than six (6) inches from their implantable medical device when the mobile device is turned ON;
- Should not carry the mobile device in a breast pocket;
- Should use the ear opposite the implantable medical device to minimize the potential for interference;
- Should turn the mobile device OFF immediately if there is any reason to suspect that interference is taking place;
- Should read and follow the directions from the manufacturer of your implantable medical device. If you have any questions about using your wireless mobile device with an implantable medical device, consult your health care provider.

For more information see: <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/rf-faqs.html#>.

Other Medical Devices

If you use any other personal medical devices, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information. Switch your mobile device off in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

Vehicles

RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle before using your mobile device in a motor vehicle. You should also consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

Posted Facilities

Switch your mobile device off in any facility where posted notices require you to do so.

Potentially Explosive Environments

Switch your mobile device off when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere and obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion

or fire resulting in bodily injury or even death. Users are advised to switch the mobile device off while at a refueling point (service station).

Users are reminded of the need to observe restrictions on the use of radio equipment in fuel depots (fuel storage and distribution areas), chemical plants, or where blasting operations are in progress. Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, clearly marked. They include below deck on boats, chemical transfer or storage facilities, vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane), areas where the air contains chemicals or particles, such as grain, dust, or metal powders, and any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine.

When your Device is Wet

Do not turn on your device if it is wet. If your device is already on, turn it off and remove the battery immediately (if the device will not turn off or you cannot remove the battery, leave it as-is). Then, dry the device with a towel and take it to a service center.

FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) Regulations for Wireless Devices

The U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) has established requirements for digital wireless mobile devices to be compatible with hearing aids and other assistive hearing devices.

When individuals employing some assistive hearing devices (hearing aids and cochlear implants) use wireless mobile devices, they may detect a buzzing, humming, or whining noise. Some hearing devices are more immune than others to this interference noise, and mobile devices also vary in the amount of interference they generate.

The wireless telephone industry has developed a rating system for wireless mobile devices to assist hearing device users find mobile devices that may be compatible with their hearing devices. Not all mobile devices have been rated. Mobile devices that are rated have the rating on their box or a label located on the box.

The ratings are not guarantees. Results will vary depending on the user's hearing device and hearing loss. If your hearing device happens to be vulnerable to interference, you may not

be able to use a rated mobile device successfully. Trying out the mobile device with your hearing device is the best way to evaluate it for your personal needs.

M-Ratings: Wireless mobile devices rated M3 or M4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to generate less interference to hearing devices than mobile devices that are not labeled. M4 is the better/higher of the two ratings. M-ratings refer to enabling acoustic coupling with hearing aids that do not operate in telecoil mode.

T-Ratings: Mobile devices rated T3 or T4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to generate less interference to hearing devices than mobile devices that are not labeled. T4 is the better/higher of the two ratings. T-ratings refer to enabling inductive coupling with hearing aids operating in telecoil mode.

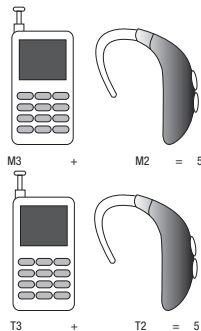
Hearing devices may also be rated. Your hearing aid manufacturer or hearing health professional may help you find this rating. Higher ratings mean that the hearing device is relatively immune to interference noise.

Under the current industry standard, American National Standards Institute (ANSI) C63.19, the hearing aid and wireless mobile device rating values are added together to indicate how usable they are together. For example, if a

hearing aid meets the M2 level rating and the wireless mobile device meets the M3 level rating, the sum of the two values equals M5.

Under the standard, this should provide the hearing aid user with normal use while using the hearing aid with the particular wireless mobile device. A sum of 6 or more would indicate excellent performance.

However, these are not guarantees that all users will be satisfied. T ratings work similarly.



The HAC rating and measurement procedure are described in the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) C63.19 standard.

HAC for Newer Technologies

This phone has been tested and rated for use with hearing aids for some of the wireless technologies that it uses. However, there may be some newer wireless technologies used in this phone that have not been tested yet for use with hearing aids.

It is important to try the different features of this phone thoroughly and in different locations, using your hearing aid or cochlear implant, to determine if you hear any interfering noise. Consult your service provider or the manufacturer of this phone for information on hearing aid compatibility. If you have questions about return or exchange policies, consult your service provider or phone retailer.

Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device

Your mobile device is not a toy. Do not allow children to play with it because they could hurt themselves and others, damage the mobile device, or make calls that increase your mobile device bill.

Keep the mobile device and all its parts and accessories out of the reach of small children.

FCC Notice and Cautions

FCC Notice

The mobile device may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using the mobile device if such interference cannot be eliminated. Vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane) must comply with the National Fire Protection Standard (NFPA-58). For a copy of this standard, contact the National Fire Protection Association.

Cautions

Any changes or modifications to your mobile device not expressly approved in this document could void your warranty for this equipment and void your authority to operate this equipment. Only use approved batteries, antennas, and chargers. The use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and void the mobile device warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the mobile device.

Although your mobile device is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, bending, or sitting on it.

Other Important Safety Information

- Only qualified personnel should service the mobile device or install the mobile device in a vehicle. Faulty installation or service may be dangerous and may invalidate any warranty applicable to the device.
- Ensure that any mobile devices or related equipment installed in your vehicle are securely mounted.
- Check regularly that all wireless mobile device equipment in your vehicle is mounted and operating properly.
- When using a headset in dry environments, static electricity can build up in the headset and cause a small quick static electrical shock. To minimize the risk of electrostatic discharge from the headset avoid using the headset in extremely dry environments or touch a grounded unpainted metal object to discharge static electricity before inserting the headset.
- Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the mobile device, its parts, or accessories.
- For vehicles equipped with an air bag, remember that an air bag inflates with great force. Do not place objects, including installed or portable wireless equipment near or in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area. If wireless equipment is improperly installed and the air bag inflates, serious injury could result.
- Switch your mobile device off before boarding an aircraft. The use of wireless mobile devices in aircraft is illegal and may be dangerous to the aircraft's operation. Check with appropriate authorities before using any function of a mobile device while on an aircraft.
- Failure to observe these instructions may lead to the suspension or denial of cell phone services to the offender, or legal action, or both.
- While using your device, leave some lights on in the room and do not hold the screen too close to your eyes.
- Seizures or blackouts can occur when you are exposed to flashing lights while watching videos or playing games for extended periods. If you feel any discomfort, stop using the device immediately.

- Reduce risk of repetitive motion injuries. When you repetitively perform actions, such as pressing keys, drawing characters on a touch screen with your fingers, or playing games, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, neck, shoulders, or other parts of your body. When using your device for extended periods, hold the device with a relaxed grip, press the keys lightly, and take frequent breaks. If you continue to have discomfort during or after such use, stop use and see a physician.
- If your device has a camera flash or light, do not use the flash or light close to the eyes of people or pets. [122011]

Section 13: Warranty Information

Standard Limited Warranty

What is covered and for how long?

SAMSUNG TELECOMMUNICATIONS AMERICA, LLC ("SAMSUNG") warrants that SAMSUNG's handsets and accessories ("Products") are free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for the period commencing upon the date of purchase by the first consumer purchaser and continuing for the following specified period of time after that date:

Phone	1 Year
Batteries	1 Year
Case/Pouch/Holster	90 Days
Other Phone Accessories	1 Year

What is not covered?

This Limited Warranty is conditioned upon proper use of the Product.

This Limited Warranty does not cover: (a) defects or damage resulting from accident, misuse, abnormal use, abnormal conditions, improper storage, exposure to liquid, moisture, dampness, sand or dirt, neglect, or unusual physical, electrical or electromechanical stress; (b) scratches, dents and cosmetic damage, unless caused by SAMSUNG; (c) defects or damage resulting from excessive force or use of a metallic object when pressing on a touch screen; (d) equipment that has the serial number or the enhancement data code removed, defaced, damaged, altered or made illegible; (e) ordinary wear and tear; (f) defects or damage resulting from the use of Product in conjunction or connection with accessories, products, or ancillary/peripheral equipment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (g) defects or damage resulting from improper testing, operation, maintenance, installation, service, or adjustment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (h) defects or damage resulting from external causes such as collision with an object, fire, flooding, dirt, windstorm, lightning, earthquake, exposure to weather conditions, theft, blown fuse, or improper use of any electrical source; (i) defects or damage resulting from cellular signal reception

or transmission, or viruses or other software problems introduced into the Product; or (j) Product used or purchased outside the United States. This Limited Warranty covers batteries only if battery capacity falls below 80% of rated capacity or the battery leaks, and this Limited Warranty does not cover any battery if (i) the battery has been charged by a battery charger not specified or approved by SAMSUNG for charging the battery; (ii) any of the seals on the battery are broken or show evidence of tampering; or (iii) the battery has been used in equipment other than the SAMSUNG phone for which it is specified.

What are SAMSUNG's obligations?

During the applicable warranty period, provided the Product is returned in accordance with the terms of this Limited Warranty, SAMSUNG will repair or replace the Product, at SAMSUNG's sole option, without charge. SAMSUNG may, at SAMSUNG's sole option, use rebuilt, reconditioned, or new parts or components when repairing any Product, or may replace the Product with a rebuilt, reconditioned or new Product.

Repaired/replaced cases, pouches and holsters will be warranted for a period of ninety (90) days. All other repaired/replaced Products will be warranted for a period equal to the

remainder of the original Limited Warranty on the original Product or for ninety (90) days, whichever is longer. All replaced Products, parts, components, boards and equipment shall become the property of SAMSUNG. Except to any extent expressly allowed by applicable law, transfer or assignment of this Limited Warranty is prohibited.

What must you do to obtain warranty service?

To obtain service under this Limited Warranty, you must return the Product to an authorized phone service facility in an adequate container for shipping, accompanied by the sales receipt or comparable proof of sale showing the original date of purchase, the serial number of the Product and the seller's name and address.

To obtain assistance on where to deliver the Product, please call SAMSUNG Customer Care at 1-888-987-4357. If SAMSUNG determines that any Product is not covered by this Limited Warranty, you must pay all parts, shipping, and labor charges for the repair or return of such Product.

You should keep a separate backup copy of any contents of the Product before delivering the Product to SAMSUNG for warranty service, as some or all of the contents may be deleted or reformatted during the course of warranty service.

What are the limits on SAMSUNG's liability?

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SETS OUT THE FULL EXTENT OF SAMSUNG'S RESPONSIBILITIES, AND THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY REGARDING THE PRODUCTS.

ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED TO THE DURATION OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. IN NO EVENT SHALL SAMSUNG BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE PRODUCT OR FOR, WITHOUT LIMITATION, COMMERCIAL LOSS OF ANY SORT; LOSS OF USE, TIME, DATA, REPUTATION, OPPORTUNITY, GOODWILL, PROFITS OR SAVINGS; INCONVENIENCE; INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES; OR DAMAGES ARISING FROM THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, OR THE DISCLAIMER OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

SAMSUNG MAKES NO WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, AS TO THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE

OR SUITABILITY OF ANY THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE PRODUCT, OR THE ABILITY TO INTEGRATE ANY SUCH SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT WITH THE PRODUCT, WHETHER SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG OR OTHERWISE. RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE AND SUITABILITY OF ANY SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT RESTS SOLELY WITH THE USER AND THE DIRECT VENDOR, OWNER OR SUPPLIER OF SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT.

Nothing in the Product instructions or information shall be construed to create an express warranty of any kind with respect to the Products. No agent, employee, dealer, representative or reseller is authorized to modify or extend this Limited Warranty or to make binding representations or claims, whether in advertising, presentations or otherwise, on behalf of SAMSUNG regarding the Products or this Limited Warranty.

This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

What is the procedure for resolving disputes?

ALL DISPUTES WITH SAMSUNG ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE SALE, CONDITION OR PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCTS SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH FINAL AND BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT BY A COURT OR JURY.

Any such dispute shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's Product or claim, and specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class action. The arbitration shall be conducted before a single arbitrator, whose award may not exceed, in form or amount, the relief allowed by the applicable law. The arbitration shall be conducted according to the American Arbitration Association (AAA) Commercial Arbitration Rules applicable to consumer disputes. This arbitration provision is entered pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act. The laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its choice of laws principles, shall govern the interpretation of the Limited Warranty and all disputes that are subject to this arbitration provision. The arbitrator shall decide all issues of interpretation and application of this arbitration provision and the Limited Warranty.

For any arbitration in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, are \$5,000.00 or less ("Small Claim"), the arbitrator may, if you prevail, award your reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs as part of any award, but may not grant SAMSUNG its attorney fees, expert witness fees or costs unless it is determined that the claim was brought in bad faith. In a Small Claim case, you shall be required to pay no more than half of the total administrative, facility and arbitrator fees, or \$50.00 of such fees, whichever is less, and SAMSUNG shall pay the remainder of such fees.

Administrative, facility and arbitrator fees for arbitrations in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, exceed \$5,000.00 ("Large Claim") shall be determined according to AAA rules. In a Large Claim case, the arbitrator may grant to the prevailing party, or apportion among the parties, reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction.

This arbitration provision also applies to claims against SAMSUNG's employees, representatives and affiliates if any such claim arises from the Product's sale, condition or performance.

You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure by providing notice to SAMSUNG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the Product. To opt out, you must send notice by e-mail to optout@sta.samsung.com, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out." You must include in the opt out e-mail (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the Product was purchased; (c) the Product model name or model number; and (d) the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number, as applicable, if you have it (the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number can be found (i) on the Product box; (ii) on the Product information screen, which can be found under "Settings;" (iii) on a label on the back of the Product beneath the battery, if the battery is removable; and (iv) on the outside of the Product if the battery is not removable). Alternatively, you may opt out by calling 1-888-987-4357 no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the Product and providing the same information. These are the only two forms of notice that will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the benefits of the Limited Warranty.

Severability

If any portion of this Limited Warranty is held to be illegal or unenforceable, such partial illegality or unenforceability shall not affect the enforceability of the remainder of the Limited Warranty.

Precautions for Transfer and Disposal

If data stored on this device is deleted or reformatted using the standard methods, the data only appears to be removed on a superficial level, and it may be possible for someone to retrieve and reuse the data by means of special software.

To avoid unintended information leaks and other problems of this sort, it is recommended that the device be returned to Samsung's Customer Care Center for an Extended File System (EFS) Clear which will eliminate all user memory and return all settings to default settings. Please contact the **Samsung Customer Care Center** for details.

Important! Please provide warranty information (proof of purchase) to Samsung's Customer Care Center in order to provide this service at no charge. If the warranty has expired on the device, charges may apply.

Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC
1301 E. Lookout Drive
Richardson, Texas 75082

Phone: 1-800-SAMSUNG
Phone: 1-888-987-HELP (4357)

©2012 Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC. All rights reserved.

No reproduction in whole or in part allowed without prior written approval. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. [111611]

End User License Agreement for Software

IMPORTANT. READ CAREFULLY: This End User License Agreement (“EULA”) is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. for software owned by Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. and its affiliated companies and its third party suppliers and licensors that accompanies this EULA, which includes computer software and may include associated media, printed materials, “online” or electronic documentation (“Software”).

BY CLICKING THE “I ACCEPT” BUTTON (OR IF YOU BYPASS OR OTHERWISE DISABLE THE “I ACCEPT”, AND STILL INSTALL, COPY, DOWNLOAD, ACCESS OR OTHERWISE USE THE SOFTWARE), YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS EULA. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THE TERMS IN THIS EULA, YOU MUST CLICK THE “DECLINE” BUTTON, AND DISCONTINUE USE OF THE SOFTWARE.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE. Samsung grants you the following rights provided that you comply with all terms and conditions of this EULA: You may install, use, access, display and run one copy of the Software on the local hard disk(s) or other permanent storage media of one computer and use the Software on a single computer or a mobile device at a time, and you may not make the Software available over a network where it could be used by multiple computers at the same time. You may make one copy of the Software in machine-readable form for backup purposes only; provided that the backup copy must include all copyright or other proprietary notices contained on the original.

2. RESERVATION OF RIGHTS AND OWNERSHIP. Samsung reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this EULA. The Software is protected by copyright and other intellectual

property laws and treaties. Samsung or its suppliers own the title, copyright and other intellectual property rights in the Software. The Software is licensed, not sold.

3. LIMITATIONS ON END USER RIGHTS. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to discover the source code or algorithms of, the Software (except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation), or modify, or disable any features of, the Software, or create derivative works based on the Software. You may not rent, lease, lend, sublicense or provide commercial hosting services with the Software.

4. CONSENT TO USE OF DATA. You agree that Samsung and its affiliates may collect and use technical information gathered as part of the product support services related to the Software provided to you, if any, related to the Software. Samsung may use this information solely to improve its products or to provide customized services or technologies to you and will not disclose this information in a form that personally identifies you.

5. UPGRADES. This EULA applies to updates, supplements and add-on components (if any) of the Software that Samsung may provide to you or make available to you after

the date you obtain your initial copy of the Software, unless we provide other terms along with such upgrade. To use Software identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed for the Software identified by Samsung as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the Software that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.

6. SOFTWARE TRANSFER. You may not transfer this EULA or the rights to the Software granted herein to any third party unless it is in connection with the sale of the mobile device which the Software accompanied. In such event, the transfer must include all of the Software (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, this EULA) and you may not retain any copies of the Software. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end user receiving the Software must agree to all the EULA terms.

7. EXPORT RESTRICTIONS. You acknowledge that the Software is subject to export restrictions of various countries. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the Software, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end user, end use, and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

8. **TERMINATION.** This EULA is effective until terminated. Your rights under this License will terminate automatically without notice from Samsung if you fail to comply with any of the terms and conditions of this EULA. Upon termination of this EULA, you must cease all use of the Software and destroy all copies, full or partial, of the Software.

9. **THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS.** Certain third-party applications may be included with, or downloaded to this mobile device. SAMSUNG makes no representations whatsoever about any of these applications. Since SAMSUNG has no control over such applications, Purchaser acknowledges and agrees that SAMSUNG is not responsible for the availability of such applications and is not responsible or liable for any content, advertising, products, services, or other materials on or available from such applications. Purchaser expressly acknowledges and agrees that use of third-party applications is at Purchaser's sole risk and that the entire risk of unsatisfactory quality, performance, accuracy and effort is with Purchaser. It is up to Purchaser to take precautions to ensure that whatever Purchaser selects to use is free of such items as viruses, worms, Trojan horses, and other items of a destructive nature. References on this mobile device to any names, marks, products, or services of any third-parties are provided solely as a convenience to

Purchaser, and do not constitute or imply an endorsement, sponsorship, or recommendation of, or affiliation with the third-party or its products and services. Purchaser agrees that SAMSUNG shall not be responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage or loss caused or alleged to be caused by, or in connection with, use of or reliance on any such third-party content, products, or services available on or through any such application. Purchaser acknowledges and agrees that your use of any third-party application is governed by such third-party application provider's Terms of Use, License Agreement, Privacy Policy, or other such agreement and that any information or personal data you provide, whether knowingly or unknowingly, to such third-party application provider, will be subject to such third-party application provider's privacy policy, if such a policy exists. SAMSUNG DISCLAIMS ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION OR ANY OTHER PRACTICES OF ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER.

10. **Disclaimer of Warranty Regarding Third-Party Applications.** SAMSUNG DOES NOT WARRANT OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS REGARDING THE AVAILABILITY, USE, TIMELINESS, SECURITY, VALIDITY, ACCURACY, OR RELIABILITY OF, OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF, OR OTHERWISE RESPECTING, THE CONTENT OF ANY

THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION WHETHER SUCH THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG, IS DOWNLOADED, OR OTHERWISE OBTAINED. USE OF ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION IS DONE AT PURCHASER'S OWN DISCRETION AND RISK AND PURCHASER IS SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGE TO YOUR MOBILE DEVICE OR LOSS OF DATA THAT RESULTS FROM THE DOWNLOADING OR USE OF SUCH THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS. SAMSUNG EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING WHETHER PURCHASER'S PERSONAL INFORMATION IS CAPTURED BY ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER OR THE USE TO WHICH SUCH PERSONAL INFORMATION MAY BE PUT BY SUCH THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER. ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS PROVIDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ON AN "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND FROM SAMSUNG, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT POSSIBLE PURSUANT TO APPLICABLE LAW, SAMSUNG DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR WORKMANLIKE EFFORT, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, RELIABILITY OR AVAILABILITY,

ACCURACY, LACK OF VIRUSES, QUIET ENJOYMENT, NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS OR OTHER VIOLATION OF RIGHTS. SAMSUNG DOES NOT WARRANT AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION, THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN THE THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION WILL MEET PURCHASER'S REQUIREMENTS, THAT THE OPERATION OF THE THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE CORRECTED. PURCHASER ASSUMES THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR, OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NO ADVICE OR INFORMATION, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, OBTAINED BY PURCHASER FROM SAMSUNG SHALL BE DEEMED TO ALTER THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY REGARDING THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS, OR TO CREATE ANY WARRANTY.

11. Limitation of Liability. SAMSUNG WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION, ITS CONTENT OR FUNCTIONALITY, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES

CAUSED BY OR RELATED TO ERRORS, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, DEFECTS, DELAY IN OPERATION OR TRANSMISSION, COMPUTER VIRUS, FAILURE TO CONNECT, NETWORK CHARGES, AND ALL OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES EVEN IF SAMSUNG HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NOT WITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING, SAMSUNG'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO PURCHASER FOR ALL LOSSES, DAMAGES, CAUSES OF ACTION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THOSE BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING OUT OF PURCHASER'S USE OF THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS ON THIS MOBILE DEVICE, OR ANY OTHER PROVISION OF THIS EULA, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT PURCHASER PAID SPECIFICALLY FOR ANY SUCH THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION THAT WAS INCLUDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS, EXCLUSIONS, AND DISCLAIMERS (INCLUDING SECTIONS 9, 10, AND 11) SHALL APPLY TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

12. U.S. Government End Users Restricted Rights. The Software is licensed only with "restricted rights" and as "commercial items" consisting of "commercial software" and "commercial software documentation" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Software and Products provided to the United States Government pursuant to solicitations issued on or after December 1, 1995 is provided with the commercial rights and restrictions described elsewhere herein. All Software and Products provided to the United States Government pursuant to solicitations issued prior to December 1, 1995 are provided with RESTRICTED RIGHTS as provided for in FAR, 48 CFR 52.227-14 (JUNE 1987) or DFAR, 48 CFR 252.227-7013 (OCT 1988), as applicable.

13. APPLICABLE LAW. This EULA is governed by the laws of TEXAS, without regard to conflicts of laws principles. This EULA shall not be governed by the UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded. If a dispute, controversy or difference is not amicably settled, it shall be finally resolved by arbitration in Seoul, Korea in accordance with the

Arbitration Rules of the Korean Commercial Arbitration Board. The award of arbitration shall be final and binding upon the parties.

14. ENTIRE AGREEMENT; SEVERABILITY. This EULA is the entire agreement between you and Samsung relating to the Software and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals and representations with respect to the Software or any other subject matter covered by this EULA. If any provision of this EULA is held to be void, invalid, unenforceable or illegal, the other provisions shall continue in full force and effect.

Numerics

2 Sec Pause

Adding 69

2G Network

Using 240

3G Network 240

Using 240

4G 231

4G Network 239

Using 239

A

Accessibility

Install Web Scripts 281

Accessing

Recently-used applications 55

Voice mail 22

Accessory

Audio Application 279

Output Mode 279

Accounts and Sync

Adding Contacts 114

Add 2 Sec Pause 72

Add to Favorites 118

Adjusting

Call volume 79

Airplane

Mode 36

Airplane Mode 238

Alarm

Setting 180

Turning Off 181

Voice Control 275

Alerts

Presidential 127

Alerts on Call 248

Allow Diagnostics 17, 279

Allowing Mock Locations 282

AMBER Alerts

Disable 128

AMBER alerts 127

Emergency alerts

Message Settings 127

Android Beam 242

On 242

Answering a call 70

Answering Key 248

Application cache and data

Clearing 205

Application Menus

Navigating through 53

Applications 40

Amazon 41

Calculator 41, 177

Calendar 41

Camera 42, 180

Clock 42

Contacts 42

Downloads 42

Dropbox 43

Email 43, 185

Evernote 43

Gallery 43

Game Base 43

Google Mail 44, 186

- Google Maps 45, 191
- Google+ 44
- Hide 40
- Internet 44, 187
- Latitude 44
- Local 44
- Lookout Security 45
- Media Hub 45
- Memo 45, 194
- Messaging 45
- messaging 195
- Messenger 45
- Mobile Hotspot 46
- MobileLife Organizer 46
- More for Me 46
- Music 46
- My files 46
- My T-Mobile 41
- Navigation 47
- Phone 47
- Play Books 47
- Play Movies 47
- Play Musc 47
- Play Store 47

- S Voice 48
- Search 48
- Settings 48
- Sharing with Others 56
- Show Hidden 40
- Shutting Down 24
- Slacker Radio 48
- Storage Used 261
- TeleNav GPS 210
- TeleNav GPS Navigator 48
- T-Mobile Name ID 48
- T-Mobile TV 48
- Using the Camcorder 154
- Using the Camera 145
- Video Player 49, 210
- Visual Voicemail 49
- Voice Recorder 49, 211
- VPN Client 49
- YouTube 49, 212

Applications and Development 176

Apps Screen

- Customizing 40

Area Code

- Auto Assign 250

- Auto Redial 250**

Auto Reject

- Configuration 71

- Auto Reject List 247**

- Auto Reject Mode 247**

- Automatic Answering 248**

- Automatic Restore 277**

B

Back up

- My Account 277

- My Data 277

- Backup and Restore 277**

Battery

- Charging 13

- Display Percentage 15, 256

- Extending Life 15

- Installing 12

- Low Battery Indicator 15

- Removal 12

- Wall Charger 13

Battery Cover

- Removal 8

- Replace 9

Battery Life

Extending 15

Battery Usage 259

Battery Use & Safety 295

Bigger Font

Setting 281

Bing

Set Search Engine 220

Blacklist

Adding 106

Bluetooth 235

About 221

Change Name 222

Deleting a Paired Device 224

Device Name 236

Disconnecting a Paired Device
224

Off 222, 235

On 222, 235

Outgoing Headset Condition 248

Paring Devices 223

Review Downloaded Files 223

Scan for Devices 223

Scanning for other Devices 236

Sending Contact Information 225

Sending Contacts Via 225

Sending Namecard 111

Set Visibility 223

Settings 222

Status indicators 222

Switching to Headset during call
80

Turning on and off 222, 235

Visibility 236

Visible Time-Out 223

Browser

Adding bookmarks 218

Deleting bookmarks 218

Easier to Read Pages 220

Emptying cookies 218

Entering a URL 215

Inverted Display 220

Navigation 214

Options 214

Power Saving 215

Quick Controls 221

Search Engine 220

Setting Brightness 215

Setting Color Saturation 215

Settings 219

Bubble

Options 125

C

Calculator

Scientific Functions 177

Calendar 178

Creating an event 179

Settings 179

Sync 179

Calibration 256

Call

Settings 70

Voice Control 275

Call Alert 248

Call Vibrations 248

Call Answering/Ending 248

Call Barring 250

Call Forwarding 248

Configuring 249

Call Functions 66

Answering 70

Background Calling 67

- Ending 67
- Ending a Call 67
- Ending via Status Bar 67
- Making a Multi-Party Call 81
- Pause Dialing 72
- Redialing the last number 72
- Wait dialing 72

Call Functions

- Vibrate 248

Call Rejection 70, 247

Call Settings 247

- Additional Settings 250

- General 247

Call Status Tones 248

Call Vibrations 248

Call Volume

- Adjusting 79

- Extra Volume 79, 248

Call Waiting 82, 250

Caller ID 250

Calling

- Using Wi-Fi 75

Calls

- Auto Reject 247

- Making a 66

- Multi-party 81

- Muting 80

Camcorder 154

- Accessing the Video Folder 157

- Options 155

- Shooting Video 154

Camera 144

- Camera Options 146

- Default Storage Location 148

- Lock Screen Shortcut 267

- Taking Pictures 145

- Voice Control 275

Care and Maintenance 301

Charging battery 13

ChatON

- Buddy photo share 153

Children and Cell Phones 291

Clearing

- Application cache and data 205

Clock 268

CMAS 127, 128

Collect Diagnostics

- Enable/Disable 277

Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS) 294

Configuration

- Initial 16

Connections

- Accessing the Internet 214

Contact

- Copying to microSD Card 112

- Copying to SIM Card 111

- Creating a New 99

- Joining 107

- New From Keypad 101

- Photo 153

Contact Entry

- Options 107

Contact List

- Options 105

Contact Menus

- Options 106

Contact Sharing

- Settings 105

Contacts

- Adding a Number to Existing 104

- Adding Your Facebook Friends 114
- Additional Options 115
- Contact Sharing 116
- Deleting 104
- Display Options 113, 116
- Displaying Contacts by Name 116
- Export List to microSD 227, 278
- First Name 116
- Groups 116
- Last Name First 116
- Merge with Google 105
- Reject List 106
- Send Namecard Via 106
- Sending All 110
- Setting Default Location 105
- Settings 116
- Sharing/Sending 110
- Contacts List** 66
- Contacts to Display** 113
- Context Menus** 104, 106
 - Navigation 54
 - Using 54

- Cookies**
 - Emptying 218
- Copying Contact** 111
- Corporate Email**
 - Account Synchronization 263
 - Add Account 263

- CPU Usage**
 - Display 283
- Creating a Playlist** 173
- Creating and sending**
 - Messages 120

- Customizing**
 - Home screens 55

D

- Data**
 - Restrict Background Data 237
- Data Limit**
 - Activating Mobile Data 237
 - Setting 237
- Data Roaming** 239
 - Activate/Deactivate 237, 239
- Data Usage**
 - Cycle 237
 - Limiting 237

- Date**
 - Selecting Format 280
- Date and Time** 279
- Default Notifications**
 - Settings 254
- Default Storage**
 - Assigning 144
 - Camcorder 20, 144, 156
 - Camera 20, 144
 - Camera Storage 148
- Deleting**
 - Multiple Messages 125
 - Single Bubble 125
 - Single Message 125
- Deleting a contact** 104
- Desk Clock** 180
 - Configuring 183
- Desktop Backup Password** 282
- Device**
 - Reset 278
- Device Options**
 - Screen 253
- Display**
 - Icons 30

- Settings 30
- Status Bar 30
- Using Negative Colors 281
- Display / Touch-Screen** 299
- Displaying your phone number** 66
- DivX**
 - Locating VOD Number 160
 - Overview 159
 - Registering Your DivX Device 160
 - Registration Code 285
- Do cell phones pose a health hazard?** 287
- Downloading**
 - New application 203
- Downloads** 183
 - Internet Downloads 183
 - Other Downloads 183
- Driving Mode** 36
- Dropbox**
 - Uploading Picture 185

E

- EDGE Network** 240
- Email** 129
 - Auto Resend Times 138

- Changing Signature 132, 137
- Composing 131
- Configuring Settings 132
- Creating an Internet Account 130
- Internet Email 130
- Opening 131
- Refreshing Messages 131
- Sending 115
- Sync Conflict 138
- Wi-Fi Download of Attachments 133, 137
- Emergency Alerts** 127
- Emergency**
 - Alert Preview 127
 - Alerts 127
- Emergency Alert**
 - Configuration 128
- Emergency Alerts**
 - AMBER 127
 - Imminent Extreme 127
 - Severe 127
- Emergency Calls** 300
 - Making 68
 - With SIM 68

- Without SIM 68
- Emoticons** 122
- Ending**
 - A call 67
- Entering Text** 87
 - Using T9 Trace 88
- Erasing files from**
 - Memory card 64
- Evernote** 110
- EWallpaper**
 - Home and Lock Screens 60
- Exchange**
 - Server Settings 139
- Exchange Email** 133
 - Account Setup 134
 - Composing 136
 - Configuring Settings 137
 - Deleting Message 137
 - Opening 136
 - Refreshing Messages 136
- Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals** 287
- Extreme Alert**
 - Disable 128

F

Factory Data Reset 278

Prior To 278

Factory data reset 65

Favorites Tab 118

FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC)

Regulations for Wireless Devices 306

FCC Notice and Cautions 308

Fixed Dialing Numbers 251

Folder

Create 39

Font

Size 256

Style 256

Font Size

Caption 212

Changing 281

Minimum Setting 220

G

Gallery

Folder Options 151

Image Options 152

Opening 158

Slideshow Settings 151

328

Games

Volume 254

Gestures

Browse Image 53

Overview 52

Shake to Update 53

Tilt to Zoom 53

Getting Started 7

Battery 12

Battery Cover 8

Locking/Unlocking the Device 18

microSD card 11

SIM Card 9

Switching Device On/Off 18

Voice Mail 22

Gmail 139, 186

Composing a Message 140

Creating an Additional Account
141

Opening 139

Other Options 140

Refreshing 140

Signing In 139

Viewing 140

Google

Account Management Settings
263

Account Synchronization 262

Add Account 262

Adding a Sync Account 262

Create New Account 19

Merge Contacts 105

Retrieving Password 20

Set Search Engine 220

Signing into Your Account 19

Voice Typing 87

Google Books 201

Google Mail

see also Gmail 140

Google Maps

Enabling a location source 191

Opening a map 192

Google Music 165, 202

Google Places

See also Local 190

Google Search 205

Settings 284

Google Talk 48, 210

Google Voice Typing

Configuring 95, 274

Using 95

GPS & AGPS 299

GPS Tag 148

GPU

Force Rendering 283

Group Cast 184

Groups

Adding an Member to an Existing

Group 117

Creating a new caller group 116

Deleting 117

Deleting a Caller Group 117

Editing a Caller Group 117

Removing an Entry 117

Settings 117

GSM 239

Gyro Sensor Calibration 256

Gyroscope

Calibration 256

H

Handwriting 90

Headset

In call Settings 248

Health and Safety Information 287

Hearing Aids 249

Hidden Applications

Show 40

Hold

Placing a Call on Hold 79

Home 37

Home City

Setting 268

Home Key 37

Home Screen

Assigning a New 56

Changing Wallpaper 60

Menu Settings 39

Overview 37

Home screens

Customizing 55

HSPA+ 231

I

Icons

Description 30

Indicator 30

Status 30

Images

Assigning as a Contact icon 153

Assigning as wallpaper 153

Transferring 227, 278

Verifying 227, 278

Importing and Exporting

To SIM card 115

In Call

Options 78

In call

Options 80

Incognito 216

Create Window 216

Exit Window 216

Indicator icons 30

International Call 71

International Calls

Making 71

Internet 214

Clear Cookies 219

Search 215

Set Home Page 219

Internet Calls

Adding SIP Accounts 249

Settings 249

Internet Downloads 183**Internet Email** 129**IP Address** 284**J****Joining**

Contact information 107

K**Kies**

Before Using 227

L**Language**

Select 271

LDAP 99, 105**Live Wallpaper**

Selecting 60

Local 190**Location and Google Search** 192**Location and Google Services** 264**Lock Screen**

Camera Quick Access 267

Changing Wallpaper 61

Clock 268

Dual Clock 268

Options 267

Say Wake-Up Command 268

Shortcuts 267

Showing Owner Info 269

Viewing Missed Calls 86

Weather 268

Logs 83

Accessing 83

Accessing from Notifications 84

Altering Numbers 85

Erasing 86

Lookout Security 190**Low battery indicator** 15**M****Making**

Emergency Calls 68

International Calls 71

New call 66

Managing Applications

Clearing Application Cache 260

Uninstalling Third-party
Applications 260**Market**

see Play Store 202

Marking contact

As a default 109

Media Hub 161, 193

Creating a New Account 162

Using 162

Memo

Options 194

Memory card

Erasing files from the 64

Merge Calls 81**Merge with Google** 105**Message**

Options 121

Read 123

Reply 124

Thread Options 124

- Threads 124
- Message Search** 126
- Message threads** 124
- Messaging**
 - Adding Attachments 122
 - Additional Text 123
 - Composing Options 122
 - Creating and sending 120
 - Creating and Sending Text Messages 120
 - Deleting a message 125
 - Google Mail 139
 - Icons on the Status Bar 119
 - Insert Smiley 122
 - Menu Options 121
 - Options 121
 - Settings 126
 - Signing into Google Mail 139
 - Text Templates 129
 - Types of Messages 119
 - Viewing new 123
- microSD Card**
 - Insertion 11
 - Removal 12

- Microsoft Exchange** 99, 129
- Missed Call**
 - Viewing from Lock Screen 86
- Mobile Data**
 - Activate/Deactivate 237
 - Set Data Limit 237
- Mobile HotSpot** 231
 - Activating 232
 - Connecting 232
- Mobile Networks** 238
 - Data Roaming 239
- Mobile NetworksUse Packet Data** 238
- Mobile Web** 214
 - Entering Text in the Mobile Web Browser 215
 - Navigating with the Mobile Web 214
 - Using Bookmarks 217
- MobileLife**
 - Contacts Backup 99
- MobileLife Organizer** 196
 - Create an Appointment 196
 - Logging In 196

- Mono**
 - Audio Setup 281
- Motion**
 - Function Activation 257
 - On 257
 - Using to Unlock 265
- Motion Settings** 257
- Mounting the SD card** 63
- Multi-Party Call** 81
 - Dropping One Participant 82
 - Private conversation 81
- Multi-party call**
 - Setting up 81
- Multi-party calls** 81
- Multi-Tasking**
 - Background Calling 67
- Music** 197
 - Volume 254
- Music App**
 - Adding Songs to Playlists 170
 - Changing Library View 166
 - Changing Settings 166
 - Creating a Playlist 169
 - Deleting a Playlist 170

- Listening 167
- Music Application 165
- Now Playing Screen 168
- Options While Playing 168
- Playing 167
- Playing a Playlist 170
- Searching for Music 166

Music File Extensions

- 3GP 170
- AAC 170
- AAC+ 170
- eAAC+ 170
- M4A 170
- MP3 170
- MP4 170
- WMA 170

Music Files

- Removing 174
- Transferring 174

Music Player

- Adding Music 173
- Creating a Playlist 173
- Editing a Playlist 174
- Making a Song a Ringtone 171

- Options 171
- Playing Music 170
- Removing Music 173
- Using Playlists 173
- Voice Control 275

MusicPlayer 170

N

Namecard

- Sending 110
- Sending All 110
- Share Via 110

Navigating

- Application Menus 53
- Sub-Menus 54
- Through Screens 50

Navigation

- Enable GPS 199
- Go Home 200
- Options 200

Negative Colors 281

Network connection

- Adding a new 229

Network Mode

- 2G Network 239, 240

- 3G Network 240

New applications

- Downloading 203

NFC

- Turning On 207

NFC (Near Field Communication) 242

Non-Play Store Applications 204

Notification Bar 35

- Using 35

Notifications

- Volume 254

O

Offensive Words

- Block 276

On/Off Switch 18

Operating Environment 304

Organizer

- Calculator 177
- World Clock 182

Other Downloads 183

Other Important Safety Information 309

Out of Office

- Message 138

- Settings 138
- Outlook** 129
 - Synchronizing 263
- Overview**
 - Home Screen 37
- Owner Information** 269

P

- Passwords**
 - Make Visible 270
- Pause Dialing** 72
- Personal Localized Alerting Network (PLAN)** 294
- Phone**
 - Icons 30
 - Switching on/off 18
- Phone number**
 - Finding 66
- Phone Ringtone** 254
- Phone Vibration** 254
- Photos**
 - Options 149, 152, 157
 - Sharing 149, 152, 157
- Picture**
 - Set As 153

- Pictures**
 - Sharing 150
- Play Books** 201
- Play Music** 202
 - Tab Options 168
- Play Store** 202
 - Quick Access 40
- Pointer Speed**
 - Configuration 277
- Power** 36
 - Auto Adjust Screen Tone 256
- Power Saving** 36
 - Background Color 258
 - CPU Power 258
 - LCD Adjustment 256
 - Learning About 258
 - Screen Power 258
- Power Saving Mode** 258
- Predictive Text**
 - Activation 93, 273
 - Using 93
 - Using XT9 92
- Prepend**
 - Area Code 250

- Primary Shortcuts** 39
 - Adding and Deleting 58
 - Customizing 58
 - Replacing 58

Q

- Quick Dialing** 66
- Quick Messaging** 121
- QWERTY**

- Accessing Keyboard 96
 - Entering Symbols 97
 - Using Keyboard 96

R

- Recently-used Applications**
 - Accessing 55
- Redialing the last number** 72
- Reducing Exposure**
 - Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories 290
- Reject Call**
 - Rejection Messages 247
- Reject Calls**
 - Managing 70
- Reject List**
 - Add To 71

Add to 84, 85

Adding 106

Auto Reject 71

Removing 106

Rejection List

Assigning Multiple Numbers 71

Assigning Single Numbers 71

Rejection Messages 247

Reset 278

Reset Device 278

Responsible Listening 302

Restarting

Device 18

Restore 277

Restrict

Background Data 237

Restricting Children's Access to Your

Mobile device 308

Ringtone

Device 254

Volume 254

S

S Beam 242

On 150, 242

334

Sharing Pictures 150

S Voice 205

Require Wake-Up 268

Set Wake-Up Command 268

Using 74

SafeSearch 276

Filtering 213

Samsung Account

Accounts and sync 21

Creating 20

Set up 162

Sign In 16

Samsung Keyboard 88

ABC Mode 91

Changing the Input Type 90

Enabling 89

Predictive Text 92

Settings 272

Symbol/Numeric Mode 91

XT9 Advanced Settings 273

Samsung Keypad

Entering Symbols 92

Samsung Mobile Products and

Recycling 297

Save a Number

From Keypad 101

Screen

Home 37

Navigation 49, 50

Screen Lock

Set Up 266

Sounds 255

Screen Lock Pattern

Changing 267

Creating 266

Deleting 267

Screen Rotation 36

Auto-Rotate 255

Screen Timeout 255

Screen Unlock

Motion 265

Swipe 265

Screens

Adding and Deleting 55

Customizing 55

Rearranging 56

SD card

- Communicating With 63
- Mounting the 63
- Unmounting 64

Search

- Settings 284

Search Engine 220**Sending a Namecard** 110**Service Numbers** 105**Setting an alarm** 180**Setting up**

- Voicemail 22

Settings 233

- Accessing 233
- Browser 219
- Contact list 116
- Display 30
- Enabling Sensor Aiding 264
- Enabling the GPS Satellites 264
- Enabling Wireless Locations 264
- Messaging 126
- Wallpaper 60, 61

Setup

- Initial 16

Severe Alert

- Disable 128

Share Applications 56**Shortcuts**

- Adding from Application Screen 57
- Adding from Home Screen 57
- Deleting from a Screen 58
- Managing 57
- Primary 39

Silent Mode

- Setup 253

SIM Card 10

- Changing Existing PIN 270
- Importing and Exporting 115
- Insertion 10
- Lock 269
- Removal 10
- Setting Up Lock 269

SIP

- Add Accounts 249
- see Internet Calls 249

Slideshow

- Settings 151

Smart Alarm 181**Smart Practices While Driving** 294**Snooze** 181

- Repeat 181

SNS 114**Social Network**

- Adding Facebook Contacts 114
- Resync 115

Social Networking

- Adding Contacts From 114

Software Update 284

- Wi-Fi 286

Song

- Set As 172

Sounds

- Turn Off All 281

Speakerphone

- Turning on and off 80

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)**Certification Information** 292**Speed Dial**

- Changing an entry 73
- Making a call 74
- Removing an entry 74

Setting up entries 73
Standard Limited Warranty 311

Status Bar 30

Strict Mode 283

Sub-Menus

Navigation 54

Switching to a Bluetooth

During a call 80

SWYPE

see also T9 Trace 88

System

Volume 254

System Manager 17, 278

System Tone

Settings 255

T

T9 Trace 88, 92, 272

Activation 88

Enabling 88

see Swype 92, 272

Task Manger

Overview 24

TecTile

Joining a Wi-Fi 209

336

Programming 208

Programming a Text Message

209

TecTiles 207

Installation 207

Tethering 241

Active Icon 231

Disconnecting 231

see USB Tethering 230

Text

Adjusting Size 220

Minimum Font Size 220

Soom Amount on Double Tap 220

Text Input

Methods 87

Text Input Method

Selecting 87

Text Templates

Create Your Own 129

Set 126

Text To Speech 276

Text-to-speech

Configuration 276

Third-Party Applications 260

Uninstalling 205

Time Zone

Selecting 280

Timer

Automatic Answering 248

Tools

Camera 145

Touches

Show 283

TrackPad

Configure 277

Transferring Large Files 150, 242

Transferring Music Files 174

TTS 276

TTY 248

TTY Mode 249

U

UL Certified Travel Charger 298

Understanding Your Device 25

Back View 28

Display 29

Features 25

Front View 26

- Home 37
- Side Views 29
- Uninstalling**
 - Third-party applications 205
- Unknown Sources** 204
 - Installing Unsigned Apps 270
- Unlock**
 - Options 267
- Unmounting**
 - SD card 64
- Unsigned Apps**
 - Unknown Sources 270
- Usage**
 - Battery 259
- USB Connections**
 - As Storage Device 226
- USB Debugging** 282
 - Disabling 63
- USB Settings**
 - As Storage Device 226
- USB Tethering** 230
 - Activating 231, 241

- Use GPS Satellites** 191, 199, 264
- Use Packet Data** 238
- Use Sensor Aiding** 191, 199, 264
- Use Wireless Networks** 191, 199, 264
- Using Favorites**
 - Adding Favorites 218
 - Deleting a Favorite 218
 - Editing Favorites 218

V

- Vibrate** 248
- Vibration**
 - Device 254
- Video**
 - Volume 254
- Video Player**
 - Playback Options 159
 - Settings 159
 - Sharing Videos 158
- Videos**
 - Default Storage Location 156
 - Options 149

- Vlingo** 276
- Voice Commands**
 - For Apps 275
- Voice Control**
 - Alarm 275
 - Camera 275
 - Incoming Calls 275
 - Music 275
- Voice Controls**
 - Activation 275
- Voice Input**
 - Recognition 276
- Voice mail**
 - Accessing 22
 - Accessing from another phone 22
 - Setting up 22
- Voice Recognizer** 276
- Voice Search** 276
- Voice Typing** 87
 - Configuring 95, 274
 - Using 95
- Vicemail** 252
- Volume Settings**
 - Adjusting 254

VPN

- Adding 244
- Settings 244

VPN Client 212

W

Wait 72

Wait dialing 72

Wallpapers

- Assigning from Gallery 153
- Changing Home Screen 60
- Changing Lock Screen 61
- Changing via Settings Menu 60
- Managing 60

Warranty Information 311

WCDMA 239

Weather

- Setting 268

Web 214

- History 218

Web applications

- enable downloading 225

Web Scripts

- Install 281

Widgets

- Adding and Removing 59
- Google Talk 48
- Moving to a Different Screen 59
- Settings 48, 206
- Stopwatch 182

Wi-Fi

- About 228
- Activating 75, 228, 233
- Advanced settings 230
- Calling 75
- Connecting to 228
- Deactivating 230
- Direct Connection 243
- During Sleep 234
- Manually Adding Network 235
- Manually scan for network 230
- Off 230
- On 228, 230, 233
- Settings 233
- Show Usage 237
- Status icons 229

Wi-Fi Calling 9

- Activating 76, 245

Connection Preferences 77, 246

- Icons 77
- Launching 77
- Settings 76, 246

Wi-Fi Direct 243

- Activate and Connect 243
- Assigning a Name 243
- On 243

World Clock

- DST Settings 182

Y

Yahoo! 220

YouTube

- High Quality 213
- High Quality 175
- Settings 212